

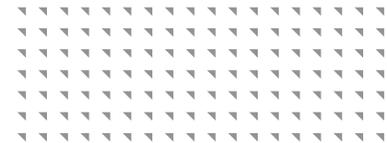


CITROËN JUMPY DISPATCH

HANDBOOK

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>



Access to the online handbook



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:
<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Direct access to the **Basic Guide**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing Citroën Jumpy-Dispatch.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in detail.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Complete Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on the use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the warranty and maintenance record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key

-  Safety warning
-  Additional information
-  Contributes to the protection of the environment
-  Left-hand drive vehicle
-  Right-hand drive vehicle

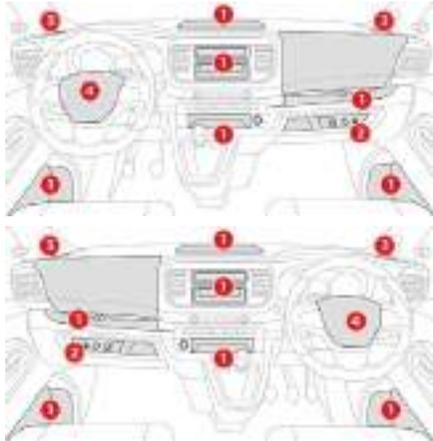
Key

This key will enable you to identify the special features of your vehicle:

-  Van
-  Crew cab with mechanical child lock
-  Crew cab with electrical child lock
-  Combi

Instruments and controls

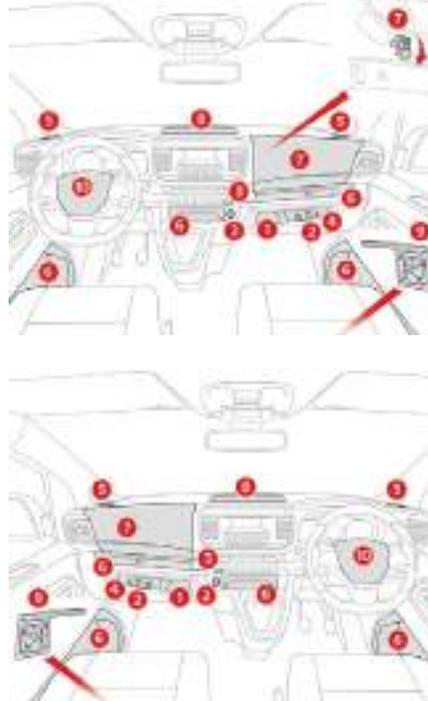
Without audio system



1. Storage compartments (if your vehicle is equipped with them).
2. 12 V accessory sockets (120 W). Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
3. Cup or can holder.
4. Audible warning (horn).

i Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the storage compartments may be open or closed. This configuration is shown for illustrative purposes.

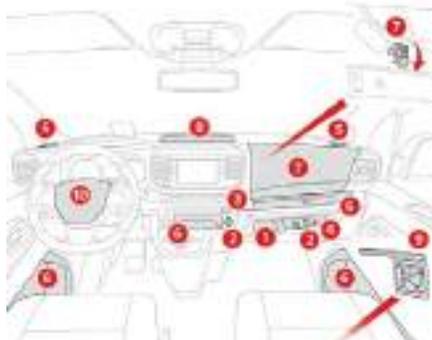
With audio system



1. Glove box.
2. 12 V accessory sockets (120 W). Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
3. USB port.
4. Auxiliary socket (JACK).
5. Cup or can holder.
6. Storage compartments.
7. Cooled glove box (if applicable). Via a ventilation nozzle, if opened, engine running and air conditioning on.
8. Upper glove box.
9. 230 V accessory socket (150 W, if your vehicle features this option). Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
10. Audible warning (horn).

i Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the storage compartments may be open or closed. This configuration is shown for illustrative purposes.

With the touch screen



1. Open glove box.
2. 12 V accessory sockets (120 W).
Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
3. USB port.
4. Auxiliary socket (JACK).
5. Cup or can holder.
6. Storage compartments.
7. Cooled glove box (if applicable).
Via a ventilation nozzle, if opened, engine running and air conditioning on.
8. Upper glove box.
9. 230 V accessory socket (150 W, if your vehicle features this option).
Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
10. Audible warning (horn).

i Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the storage compartments may be open or closed. This configuration is shown for illustrative purposes.

Steering mounted controls



1. External lighting/direction indicator control stalk
2. Wiper/screenwash/trip computer control stalk
3. Audio system adjustment controls (depending on the version you have)
4. Speed limiter controls / cruise control Dynamic cruise control
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice synthesis control (depending on version)
Volume adjustment (depending on version)
7. Audio system adjustment controls (depending on the version you have)

Central switch panel



Locking/unlocking from inside



Electric sliding side door(s)



Cabin and loading area selectivity



Electric child lock



Hazard warning lamps



Reset of the tyre under-inflation detection



Deactivation of Stop & Start



Deactivation of the DSC/ASR system

Side control bar



Grip control



Head-up display



Programmable Heating / Ventilation



Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



Parking sensors



Manual headlamp beam height adjustment



Lane departure warning system alert



Blind spot monitoring system



Automatic headlamp dipping

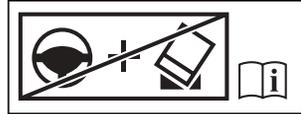
Labels



▶ 78

▶ 96

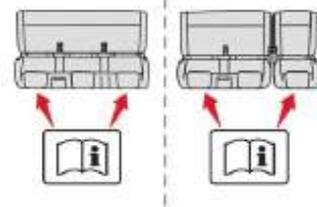
▶ 96



▶ 98



▶ 105



▶ 105



▶ 127



▶ 159



▶ 166



▶ 174



▶ 200, 246



▶ 290

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open. Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Use a roof box in preference.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

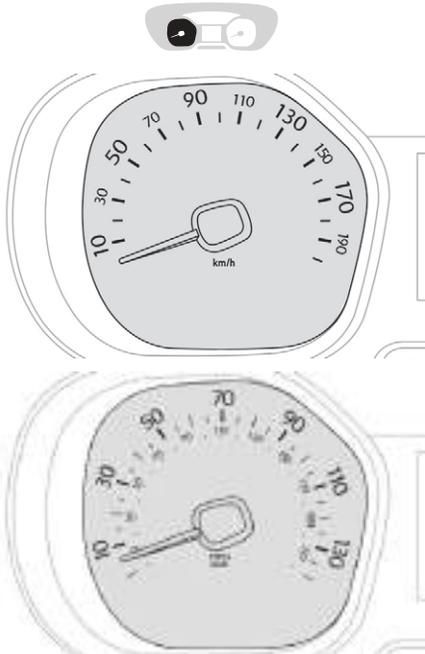
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit as soon as possible a CITROËN or a qualified workshop to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxide emissions compliant to the standard.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,800 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panel Speedometer



Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Indicators with LCD text or matrix instrument panel



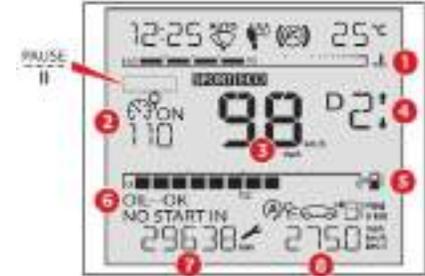
1. Fuel gauge.
2. Coolant temperature gauge.

Display screen



i When travelling abroad, you may need to change the units of distance: The speed display must be expressed in the official unit of the country (miles or km). The units are changed in the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

With LCD instrument panel



1. Coolant temperature gauge.
2. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear shift indicator.
Gear with an automatic or electronic gearbox.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

With LCD text instrument panel



1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
2. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear shift indicator.
Gear with an automatic or electronic gearbox.
4. Maintenance indicator, then Total distance recorder (km or miles), trip distance recorder (km or miles), message displays, etc.

With matrix instrument panel



1. Speed limiter or cruise control settings.
2. Gear shift indicator.
Gear with an automatic or electronic gearbox.
3. Display area: alert or function state message, trip computer, digital speed indicator (km/h or mph), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons



With LCD instrument panel



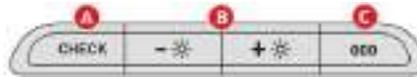
- A. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: navigation in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- B. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (press and hold), validation of a choice (short press).

With LCD text instrument panel



- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (press and hold), validation of a choice (short press).

With matrix instrument panel



- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: entry in the configuration menu (press and hold), validation of a choice (short press).

Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).



You can also modify the lighting dimmer via the touch screen.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault detected with the engine, the braking system, the power steering, etc., or a major electrical fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Parking brake	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to extinguish the warning lamp; keep your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the Parking brake , refer to the corresponding section.
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid listed by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 		Fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Belt(s) not buckled / unbuckled	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A belt has not been buckled or has been unbuckled.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue into the buckle.
	Battery charge	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 or 	Maximum coolant temperature	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone. Fixed (only with the LCD instrument panel).	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
	<p>Door(s) open</p> <p>Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).</p> <p>Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).</p>	<p>A front, side or rear door (side-hinged rear door or tailgate) is still open.</p> <p>If fitted to your vehicle, the tailgate screen is still open.</p>	<p>Close the door or boot.</p> <p>If your vehicle has side-hinged rear doors and the right-hand door is still open, this will not be signalled by this warning lamp.</p>
 <p>or</p> 	<p>Min fuel level</p> <p>Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.</p> <p>Fixed (only with the LCD instrument panel).</p>	<p>When it first comes on there remains less than 8 litres of fuel in the tank.</p>	<p>Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.</p> <p>This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until sufficient fuel is added.</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity: approximately 69 litres.</p> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p>
	<p>Water present in the diesel fuel</p> <p>Fixed (only with the LCD instrument panel).</p>	<p>The diesel filter contains water.</p>	<p>There is a risk of damage to the injection system.</p> <p>Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.</p>

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Engine diagnostic system	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning light should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
		Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 SERVICE 		Fixed, associated with the service warning lamp.	A minor failure in the engine has been detected.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 STOP	Engine self-diagnosis system	Fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	A major failure in the engine has been detected.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2 nd position (ignition on). or The " START/STOP " button has been pressed.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the clutch pedal is depressed fully with a manual gearbox, - pressure is maintained on the brake pedal with an automatic or electronic gearbox. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in extreme weather conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	Under-inflation	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	One or more wheels have insufficient pressure.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on Under-inflation detection , refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Foot on brake	Fixed.	The brake pedal must be depressed.	With an automatic or electronic gearbox, depress the brake pedal, engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to release the selector lever and come out of position P or N . If you wish to release the parking brake without depressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
	Foot on the clutch	Fixed.	In STOP mode of the Stop & Start, the transition to START mode has been rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully pressed down.	With a manual gearbox, you must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated (via the menu).	For more information on the Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake system, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
 Particle filter (diesel)	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	This indicates that the particle filter is beginning to saturate.	Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the particle filter's additive level being too low.	This indicates that the level in the additive tank is low.	Quickly arrange for a top-up by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop.
 Airbags	Temporarily on.	This warning light comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning light should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 Passenger front airbag	Fixed, in the seat belt and passenger front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located at the passenger end of the dashboard, is set to the OFF position. The passenger front airbag is deactivated. You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).	Turn the control switch to the ON position to activate the passenger front airbag; in this case, you must not install a child seat in the rearward facing position on this seat.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Passenger airbag system	Fixed.	The control switch, located at the passenger end of the dashboard, is at the ON position. The passenger front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on the front seat.	Move the control switch to the OFF position to deactivate the passenger front airbag. You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning light on).
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Fixed.	The button is pressed and the indicator lamp comes on. The DSC/ASR is deactivated. DSC: dynamic stability control. ASR: anti-slip regulation.	Press the button to activate the DSC/ASR. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started. If the system is deactivated, it is reactivated automatically once a speed of around 30 mph (50 km/h) is reached. For more information on the Electronic stability programme (ESC) and in particular, DSC/ASR, refer to the corresponding section.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and allows improved directional stability of the vehicle.
		Fixed.	Outside deactivation, the DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Power steering	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations	
	AdBlue® (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Have the AdBlue® tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.	
		Flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning light, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® tank to avoid a breakdown : go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must top up the AdBlue® tank: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to the fluid tank.

Warning / indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action / Observations
  SERVICE 	<p>Fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lights, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.</p>	<p>A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.</p>	<p>This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.</p>
	<p>Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lights, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.</p>	<p>After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can continue driving for up to 650 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.</p>	<p>Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid a breakdown.</p>
	<p>Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lights, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.</p>	<p>You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.</p>	<p>To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p>

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Service	Temporarily on, with a message displayed.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	Rear foglamps	Fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
 AUTO Automatic wiper	Fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiping, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.	
 A Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position, and the function has been activated. The main beam headlamps come on if the exterior lighting and driving conditions permit.	The camera, located at the top of the windscreen, manages the operation of main beam, depending on the ambient lighting and driving conditions. For more information on Automatic headlamp dipping , refer to the corresponding section.	
 A Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.), the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.	
	Flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is triggered automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start , refer to the corresponding section.	
 A Blind spot monitoring	Fixed.	The blind spot monitoring system has been activated.	For more information on the Blind spot monitoring system , refer to the associated section.	

Warning / indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action / Observations
	Lane departure warning system alert	Fixed.	The lane departure warning system has been activated.	The lane departure warning system is activated. For more information on the Lane departure warning system , refer to the corresponding section.
	Front fog lights	Fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control lever rearward once to switch off the front fog lights.
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved up.	
	Dipped beam headlights	Fixed.	The lighting lever is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	Main beam headlights	Fixed.	The lighting lever has been pulled towards you.	Pull the lever to return to dipped beam headlamps.

i For more information on the lighting controls, refer to the "Visibility" section.

Indicators

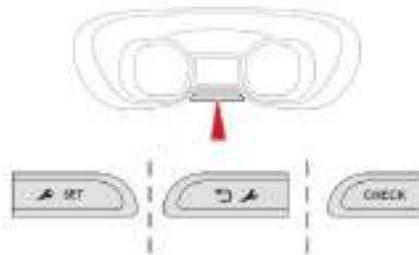
Service indicator

Warning and indicator		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Service spanner	Fixed, temporary when the ignition is switched on.	There are between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,800 miles (3,000 km) before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) before the next service is due. - an alert indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner goes off after a few seconds. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Less than 600 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining as well as the period before the next service is due. <p>The service spanner is on to indicate that service is required very soon. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.</p>

Warning and indicator		State	Cause	Actions / Observations
	Service spanner	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder display line indicates the distance travelled since the due date was reached. Value preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that the due date has passed. <p>The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.</p>
		Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on, associated with the service warning lamp.	Service date passed for Diesel BlueHDi versions.	<p>The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - the total distance recorder display line indicates the distance travelled since the due date was reached. Value preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that the due date has passed. <p>The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.</p>

 The distance indicated (in kilometres or miles) is calculated according to the mileage covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

Resetting the service indicator



The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself, switch off the ignition:



☞ Press and hold this button.



- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

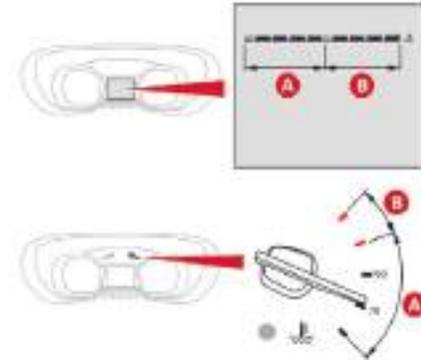


☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.



Engine coolant temperature



With engine running, when the needle or bar graph (depending on version) is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature of the engine coolant is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature of the engine coolant is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message in the touch screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking the level

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase. To top up to the required level:

- ☞ wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Checking levels

! Be aware of the risk of burns when topping up the cooling system. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the expansion tank).

Engine oil level indicator

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds upon setting ignition on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

i To locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap for the **Diesel engine**, refer to the corresponding section.



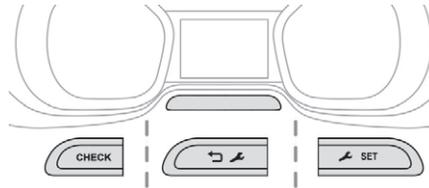
There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level,
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

AdBlue® liquid range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

If a system fault and low AdBlue® level occur at the same time, the lowest range is the one displayed.



Pressing this button will temporarily display the remaining range.

With touch screen



You can access the information via the **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 350 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles (1,500 km)") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.



With LCD instrument panel, "NO START IN" is displayed.

When driving, the message comes up every 200 miles (300 km) until the tank is topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Range less than 350 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles (600 km)") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.



With an LCD instrument panel, "NO START IN" is displayed.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

i For more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented".



With an LCD instrument panel, "NO START IN" is displayed.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 4 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! An engine immobiliser is activated automatically after you have driven a further 650 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault". The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the warning lamp AdBlue flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented



in 300 km") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

With an LCD instrument panel, "NO START IN" is displayed.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".



With an LCD instrument panel, "NO START IN" is displayed.

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started. To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

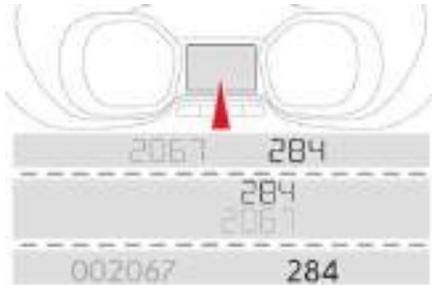
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.



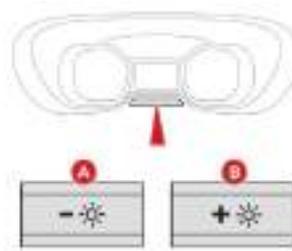
- ☞ With the ignition on, press this button until zeros appear.



Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

At the instrument panel



- ☞ With the exterior lighting on, press this button **A** to lower the level of brightness.
 - ☞ With the exterior lighting on, press this button **B** to raise the level of brightness.
- As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

With the touch screen



- ☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".



- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the cursor.



- ☞ Press "**Confirm**" to save and quit.

You can also switch off the screen. To do this:



- ☞ Press the **Settings** button.



- ☞ Select **Switch off screen**.

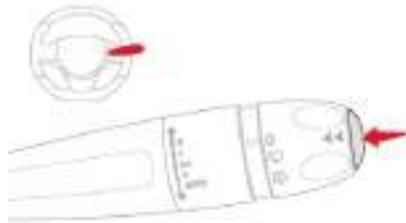
The screen goes off completely. Press the screen again (anywhere in its surface) to activate it.

Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, instantaneous fuel consumption, average fuel consumption, etc.).

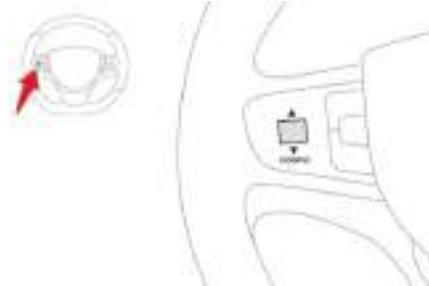
Data displays

To display the various on-board computer tabs in succession:



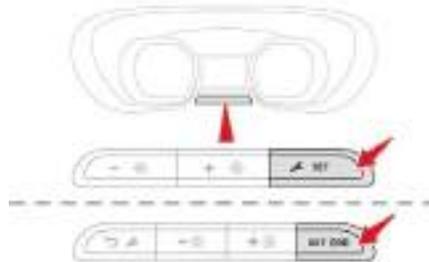
- ☞ Press this button, located at the tip of the **wiper control stalk**.

With steering-mounted controls



- ☞ Press the knob on the **steering wheel**.

On the instrument panel



- ☞ Press this button.

- Instant information with:
 - range,
 - current fuel consumption,
 - the Stop & Start time counter.

1

- the trip 1 tab with:
 - average speed,
 - average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the first trip.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, a 2nd trip is available.

2

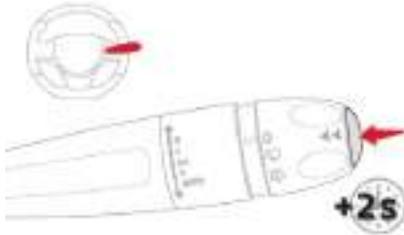
- the trip 2 tab with:
 - average speed,
 - average fuel consumption,
 - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

Trips 1 and 2 are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip 1 can be used for daily figures and trip 2 for monthly figures.

Reset trip

With LCD instrument panel



- ☞ When the trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



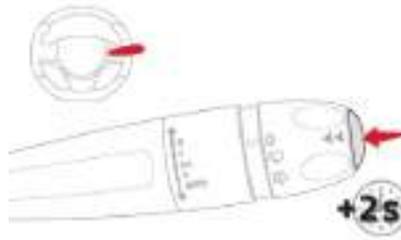
- ☞ Or press this button for more than two seconds.

With LCD text instrument panel

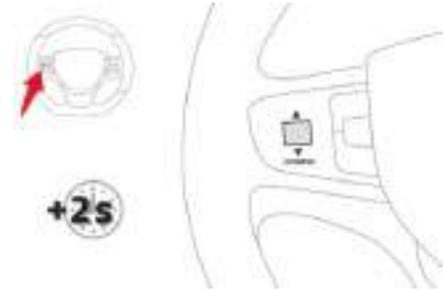


- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button in the instrument panel for more than two seconds.

With LCD text or matrix instrument panel



- ☞ When the trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



- ☞ Or, depending on equipment, press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.

A few definitions

Range

- ☞  (miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 20 miles (30 km). After filling with at least 8 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

i If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

 **l/100** (mpg or km/l or l/100 km)
Calculated during the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

 **l/100** (mpg or km/l or l/100 km)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Average speed

 (mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Distance travelled

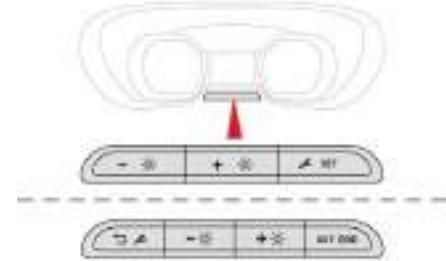
 (miles or km)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Time counter Stop & Start

 (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
or
 **ECO**

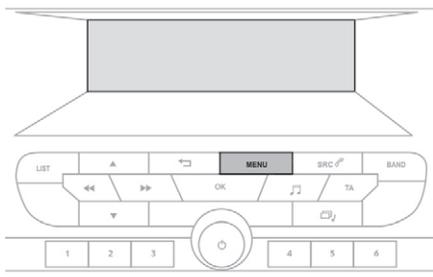
If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Date and time adjustment Without audio system



-  **SET 000**  Hold this button down.
-  **SET**
-     Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.
-  **SET 000**  Press this button briefly to confirm.
-  **SET**
-     Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

With audio system



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**.



- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" buttons to select the **"Personalisation-configuration"** menu, then confirm by pressing the OK button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the **Display configuration** menu then confirm by pressing the OK button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" and "◀" or "▶" buttons to set the date and time, then confirm by pressing the OK button.

With CITROËN Connect Radio

- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu.



- ☞ Select **"Date and time"**.

- ☞ Select **"Date"** or **"Time"**.
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Confirm with **"OK"**.

With CITROËN Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation when the GPS is deactivated.

- ☞ Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



- ☞ Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

- ☞ Select the **"Date:"** or **"Time"** tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.

Additional adjustments

You can choose:

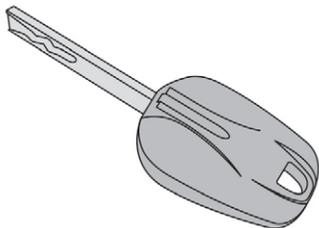
To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).

To change the time zone.

Activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

i The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Key



The key allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock.

It also allows the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine started or switched off.

Key, remote control

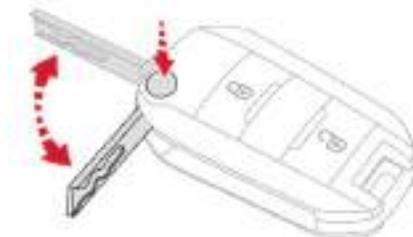


It allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.

It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

i The remote control buttons are not active when the ignition is switched on.

Unfolding/Folding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

! If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

What is the purpose of total or selective unlocking?



Total unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).

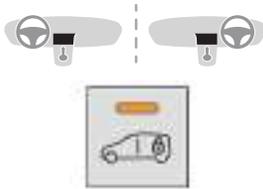


Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cab** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

i The separated unlocking system between **cab** and **loading area** is a security measure. It is used to close access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not.

2

Programming



- ☞ To activate this selectivity between **cab** and **loading area**, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.



Its indicator lamp comes on.



- ☞ To deactivate this selectivity and return to **total** unlocking, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.



Its indicator light goes off.

An audible signal sounds and, depending on the equipment, a message confirming that the request has been applied, appears.

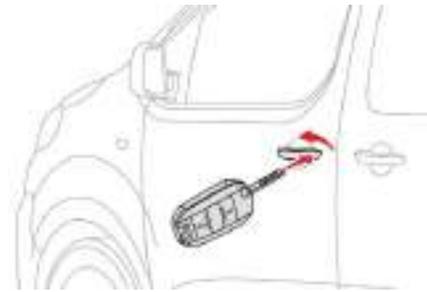
i By default, selectivity between **cab** and **loading area** is activated.

Complete unlocking



Cab and **loading area** selectivity disabled.

With the key



- ☞ To **fully** unlock the vehicle, turn the key to the front of the vehicle.
 - ☞ Then pull the handle to open the door.
- If your vehicle has such equipment, the alarm is not deactivated. The opening of a door will trigger the alarm that will be stopped when ignition is switched on.

With the remote control



- ☞ Press one of these buttons (depending on the equipment) to unlock the vehicle.



Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To unlock the vehicle **completely** without opening the side door, press this button.



- ☞ To **fully** unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened



i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds.

At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking



Cab and loading area selectivity activated.

Using the remote control



To unlock just the **cab** doors, press this button **once**.



To unlock the **loading area** opening elements (side and rear), press this button **again**.

If your vehicle is so equipped:



Press this button to unlock the **loading area alone**.

Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)



To unlock the **loading area** alone without opening the side door, press this button.



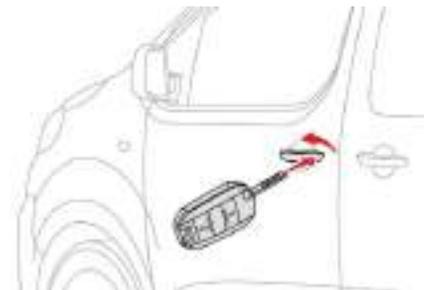
To unlock the **loading area** alone and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds. According to version, the electric door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

Unlocking



With the key



To unlock the vehicle, turn the key to the front of the vehicle.

Then pull the handle to open the door.

If your vehicle features this system, the alarm will not be disabled. Opening a door will trigger the alarm that will be stopped when ignition is switched on.

Using the remote control



To unlock the vehicle, press this button.

2

Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)



☞ To unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened.

- ! Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

Locking

With the key



☞ To unlock the vehicle totally, turn the key to the rear of the vehicle.
If your vehicle has an alarm, this will not be activated.

Using the remote control



☞ To lock the vehicle totally, press this button.

- ! Ensure that no person or object prevent the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.



If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):

- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without your remote control with you, even for a short period.

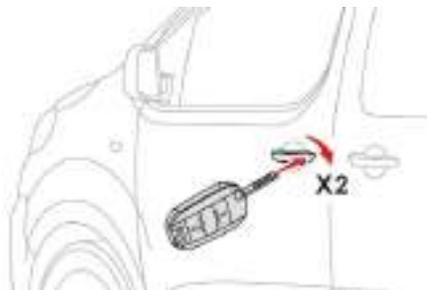
! If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! If one of the opening elements (doors or boot) is still open, the central locking does not take place. When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door is opened. And if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be reactivated (with volumetric monitoring, even if this had been deactivated). The automatic folding and unfolding of the electric door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

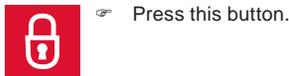


To deadlock the vehicle:

- ☞ Turn the key to the rear of the vehicle.
- ☞ Then within five seconds, turn the key to the rear again.

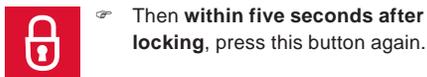
Using the remote control

To lock the vehicle:



i According to the version you have, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

To deadlock the vehicle:



i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

! Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked for more than five seconds.



This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of lighting

If fitted to your vehicle.



A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).



A second press on this button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

SERVICE



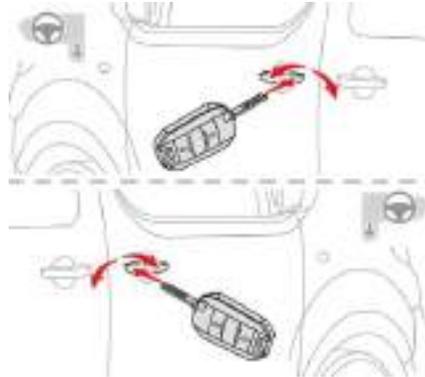
In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Back-up control(s)

For mechanically locking and unlocking the doors in the event of a fault with the central locking system or a battery failure.

Locking the driver's door



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

Unlocking

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

i If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated/activated on unlocking/locking the vehicle.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Locking the front passenger door

- ☞ Open the door.



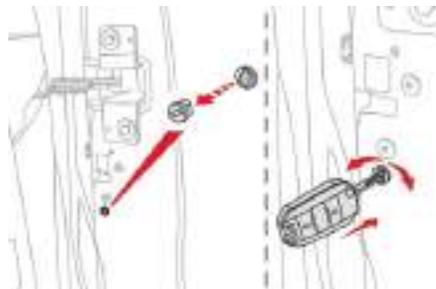
- ☞ Remove the cap on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the key into the latch aperture (without forcing) and turn the assembly.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

Unlocking

Use the interior door handle.

Locking the sliding side door

- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not on.
- ☞ Open the door.



- ☞ Remove the cap on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the key into the latch aperture (without forcing) and turn the assembly.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

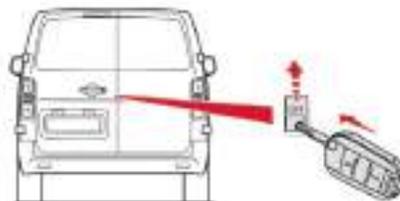
Unlocking

- ☞ Use the interior door handle.

i For more information on the child lock, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the side-hinged doors

- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not on.
- ☞ Open the left-hand door.



- ☞ Insert the key into the latch aperture on the edge of the door (without forcing) and slide the assembly upward.
- ☞ Remove the key.
- ☞ Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

Unlocking

- ☞ Use the interior door handle.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

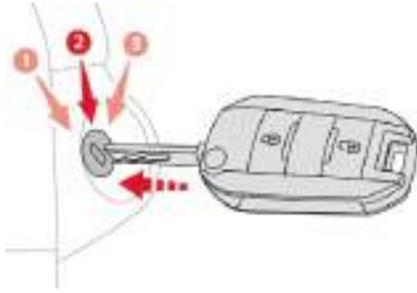
Reset

- ☞ Lock the driver's door using the key.



- ☞ Press one of the remote control buttons.

2



- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the switch.

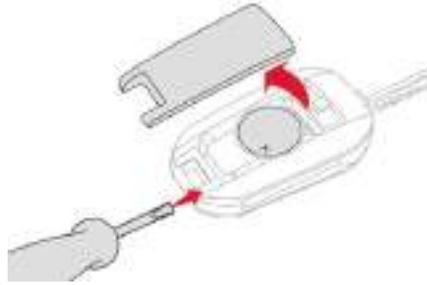
The remote control is now fully operational again.

Changing the battery

Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.



If the battery is flat, you will be informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its compartment.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Keyless Entry and Starting

Remote control

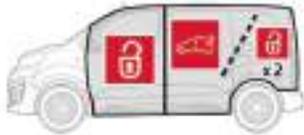


It allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

What is the purpose of total or selective unlocking?



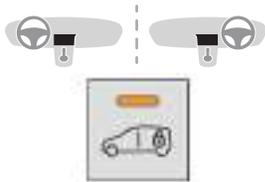
Total unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).



Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cab** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

i The separated unlocking system between **cab** and **loading area** is a security measure. It is used to close access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not.

Programming



 To activate this selectivity between **cab** and **loading area**, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.
 Its indicator lamp comes on.

 To deactivate this selectivity and return to **total** unlocking, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.
 Its indicator light goes off.
 An audible signal sounds and, depending on the equipment, a message confirming that the request has been applied, appears.

i By default, selectivity between **cab** and **loading area** is activated.

Complete unlocking



 **Cab** and **loading area** selectivity disabled.

  Press one of these buttons (depending on equipment) to unlock the vehicle.

With electric sliding side door(s)

 To unlock the vehicle **completely** without opening the side door, press this button.

 To **fully** unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened.

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds. At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking



Cab and loading area selectivity enabled.



To unlock just the **cab** doors, press this button **once**.



To unlock opening elements in the **loading area** (lateral and rear), press this button **again**.

If your vehicle is so equipped:



Press this button to unlock the **loading area alone**.

With electric sliding side door(s)



To unlock the **loading area** alone without opening the side door, press this button.



To unlock the **loading area** alone and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds.
According to version, the electric door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.

Unlocking



To unlock the vehicle, press this button.

With electric sliding side door(s)



To unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened.

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around two seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

Locking



To lock the vehicle totally, press this button.

i



If it is fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button closes the windows. If you release the button, the window will stop.



!

Ensure that no person or object prevent the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.



If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):

- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

!

Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency. As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your remote control, even for a short period.

i

If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

i

If one of the opening elements (doors or boot) is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door is opened. And if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be reactivated (with volumetric monitoring, even if this had been deactivated).

i

The automatic folding and unfolding of the electric door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

2

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

To lock the vehicle:



☞ Press this button.

i According to version, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

To deadlock the vehicle:



☞ Then within five seconds after locking, press this button again.

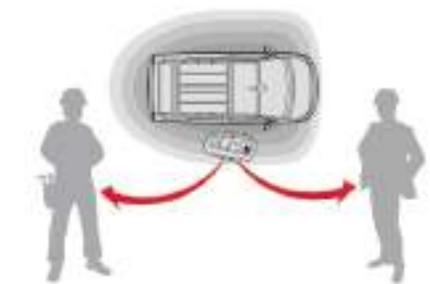
i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

i  If it is fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button closes the windows. If you release the button, the window will stop.



! Ensure that no person or object prevent the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



This allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the remote control on your person.

i In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated. For more information on **Starting-stopping the engine, Keyless Entry and Starting** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the associated section.

i The unlocking, locking or deadlocking does not take place:

- if the ignition is on,
- if one of the doors or the boot is still open,
- if the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked (with the remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting), if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door has been opened. And if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be reactivated (with volumetric monitoring, even if this had been deactivated).

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors by the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your Keyless Entry and Starting remote control, even for a short period.

Be aware of the risk of theft when the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control is in the recognition zone with the vehicle unlocked.

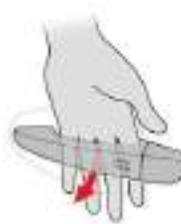
In order to preserve the charge of the battery in the remote control, the "hands-free" functions go into extended stand-by after 21 days of non-use.

To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the remote control at the reader.

Complete unlocking

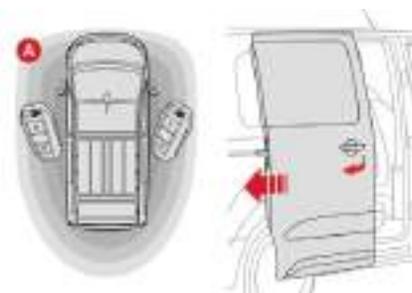


Cabin and loading area
selectivity disabled.



- ☞ To unlock the **vehicle**, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors, manual sliding side doors and side-hinged doors).
- ☞ Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

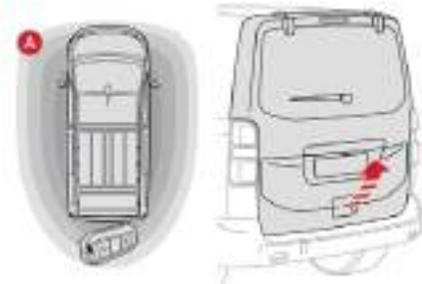
With electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To unlock the **vehicle**, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pull and release the door handle to trigger the electric powered opening of the associated door.

2

With a tailgate



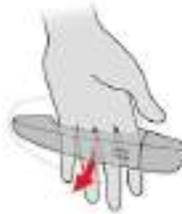
- ☞ To unlock the **vehicle**, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pull the tailgate handle.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

i Unlocking is indicated by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the alarm is deactivated.

Selective unlocking

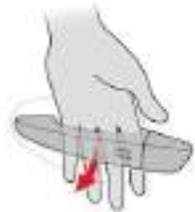
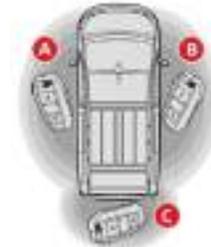


Cab and loading area selectivity enabled.



- ☞ To unlock the **cab** alone, the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A** or **B**, run your hand behind a handle of the front left or right doors.
- ☞ Then pull the handle to open the associated door.

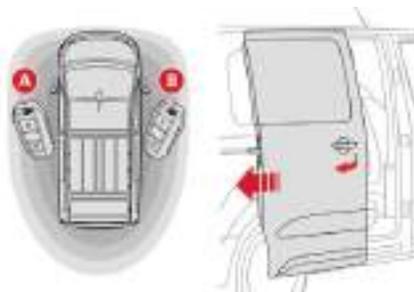
i The door locking state of the **loading area** remains unchanged.



- ☞ To unlock the **loading area** alone, the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A** or **B** or **C**, run your hand behind a handle of the left, right or rear door.
- ☞ Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

i Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold only when the cab is unlocked, the alarm is deactivated.

With electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To unlock the **unloading area**, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A** and **B**, pull and release the door handle to trigger the electric powered opening of the corresponding door.

With a tailgate



- ☞ To unlock the **loading area**, remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **C**, pull the tailgate handle.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

i Unlocking is indicated by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

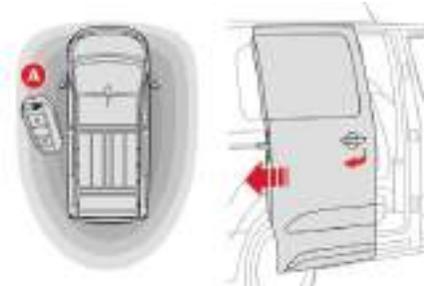
Unlocking



- ☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, run your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors, manual sliding side doors).
- ☞ Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

2

With electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, **pull and release the door handle** to trigger the electric powered opening of the corresponding door.

With side-hinged doors



- ☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, run a hand behind the handle of the side-hinged door.
- ☞ Then pull the handle to open it.

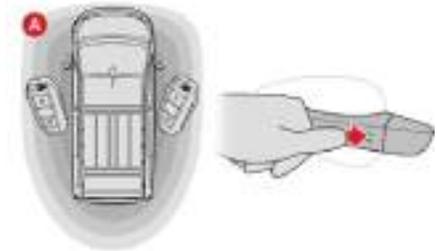
With a tailgate



- ☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pull the tailgate handle.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

i Unlocking is indicated by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the alarm is deactivated.

Locking



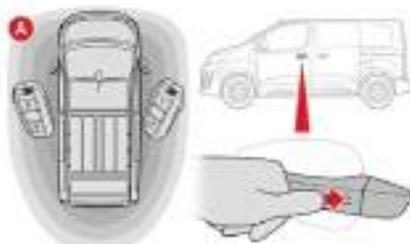
- ☞ To **totally** lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb at the markings on one of the front or manual sliding side door handles.



If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):

- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

With electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To **totally** lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb at the markings on one of the **front** door handles.

With side-hinged doors



- ☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.

With a tailgate



- ☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press the tailgate locking control.

i **+3s** If fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding the locking controls allows the windows to be opened. If you release the control, the window stops.

! Ensure that no person or object prevent the correct closing of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

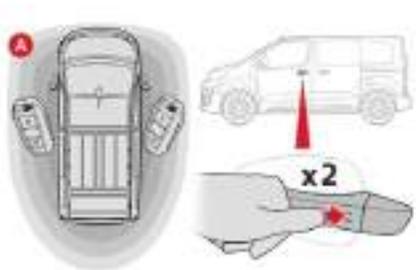
Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central locking button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



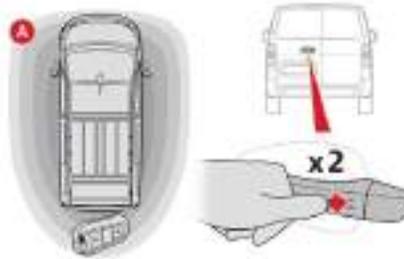
- ☞ To **totally** lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb at the markings on one of the front or manual sliding side door handles.
- ☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds**.

With electric sliding side door(s)



- ☞ To **totally** lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb at the markings on one of the **front** door handles.
- ☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds**.

With side-hinged doors



- ☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door locking control.
- ☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

With a tailgate



- ☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press the tailgate locking control.
- ☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked for more than five seconds.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of lighting

If fitted to your vehicle.



A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (sidelamps, dipped beam headlights and number plate lamps).



A second press on this button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible. A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

SERVICE



In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

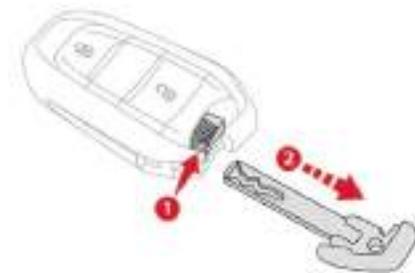
The vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

Back-up control(s)

Integral key

It is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the remote control cannot operate:

- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.

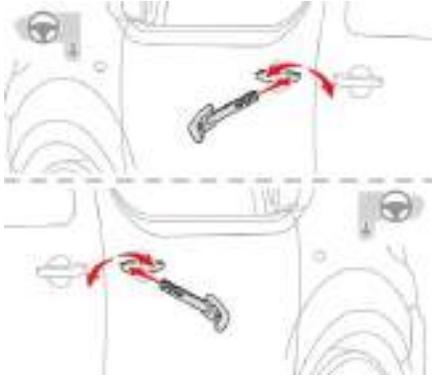


☞ Hold button 1 pulled to extract the integral key 2.

i If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

2

Locking the driver's door



- ☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

Unlocking

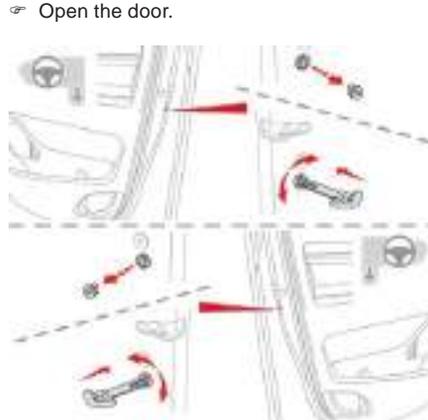
- ☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

I If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated/activated on unlocking/locking the vehicle.

Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key again within five seconds of locking.

Locking the front passenger door



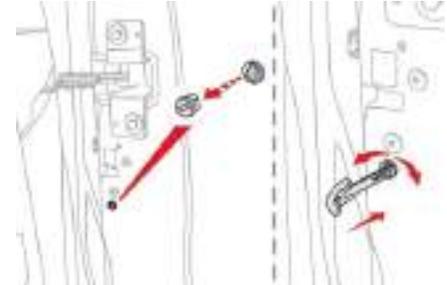
- ☞ Open the door.

- ☞ Remove the cap on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the key into the latch aperture (without forcing) and turn the assembly.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking

- ☞ Use the interior door handle.

Locking the sliding side door



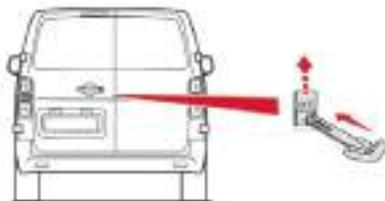
- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not on.
- ☞ Open the door.
- ☞ Remove the cap on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the key into the latch aperture (without forcing) and turn the assembly.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

Unlocking

- ☞ Use the interior door handle.

Locking the side-hinged doors

- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not on.
- ☞ Open the left-hand door.



- ☞ Insert the key (without forcing) into the latch aperture located on the edge of the door and slide the assembly upward.
- ☞ Remove the key.
- ☞ Close the door and check from the outside that it has locked correctly.

Unlocking

- ☞ Use the interior door handle.

i For more information on the child lock, refer to the corresponding section.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First, use the integral key in the door lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then reinitialise the remote control.

Reset

- ☞ Unlock the driver's door using the integral key.



- ☞ Press one of the remote control buttons.

- ☞ Place the integral key in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



- ☞ Place the remote control against the reader.
- ☞ Keep it into place and switch the ignition on, pressing "START/STOP".

The remote control is now fully operational again.

i If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Changing the battery

Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

A message is displayed in the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.



- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the dead battery from its compartment.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

! Lost keys, remote control

Go to a CITROËN dealer, taking with you the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You may stop it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting remote control may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

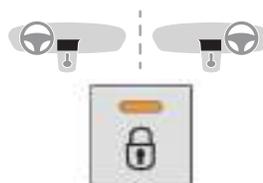
When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking from inside

Locking the vehicle



i This button is inoperative if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment) or if one of the doors is still open.

Automatic

The cab doors lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)); the indicator lamp comes on.



i To activate or deactivate this function, with the ignition on, press this button until a message appears in the screen.



Manual



i Press this button.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the locking.

i When carrying long objects with the tailgate or rear doors open, you can press this button to lock just the cabin doors. When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

! If the vehicle is deadlocked or locked with the remote control or the door handles, the button is not operational. Then, use the key or remote control to unlock.

Unlocking the vehicle

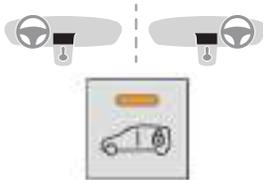


☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp goes off to confirm the unlocking.

i The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors.

Locking/unlocking the loading area



i This button is unavailable if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment) or if one of the doors is still open.

Automatic

The **loading area** is always locked when driving.

i To deactivate the automatic locking function, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual



Cab and loading area selectivity disabled.



☞ Vehicle unlocked, press this button.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the **vehicle is** locked.



☞ Vehicle locked, press this button.

The indicator lamp goes off to confirm the **vehicle is** unlocked.



Cab and loading area selectivity enabled.



☞ **Loading area** unlocked, press this button.

The indicator lamp comes on to confirm that the **loading area** is locked.



☞ **Loading area** locked, press this button.

The indicator lamp goes off to confirm that the **loading area** is unlocked.

! Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

i The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors of the **loading area**.
For energy efficiency purposes, with ignition off and vehicle fully locked, the indicator lamp goes off.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control** or **Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular selective unloading area locking programming, refer to the associated section.

Front doors

Opening

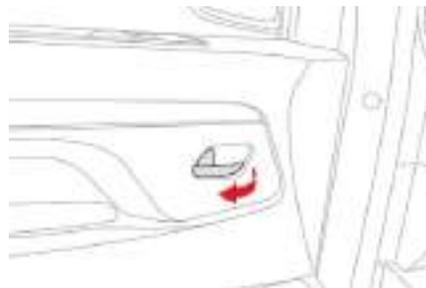
From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment), pull the door handle.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control** or **Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

From inside



Cab and loading area selectivity deactivated and vehicle locked.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to **totally** unlock the vehicle and open the door.



Cab and loading area selectivity activated and vehicle locked.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to unlock the **cab** and open the door.



Vehicle locked.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to **totally** unlock the vehicle and open the door.

i If the door is unlocked, pull the handle to open the door.

! The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

☞ Push or pull the door to close it, then lock it.



When a door is not closed correctly:

- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the associated section.

Manual sliding side door(s)

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment), pull the door handle.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the latch (located at the bottom of the door).

! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor to allow the door to slide correctly. As a safety measure and for functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

From inside



Vehicle locked



Cab and loading area selectivity disabled.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to **totally** unlock the vehicle and open the door.



Cab and loading area selectivity deactivated and child lock deactivated.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to **totally** unlock the vehicle and open the door.



Cabin and loading area selectivity activated.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to unlock the **loading area** and open the door.



Cab and loading area selectivity activated and child lock deactivated.

- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to unlock the **loading area** and open the door.



- ☞ Pull the interior control lever on a door to **totally** unlock the vehicle and open the door.

Vehicle unlocked



- ☞ Pull the handle toward the rear to open the door.



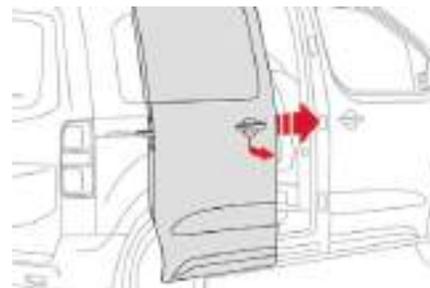
Child lock deactivated.

- ☞ Pull the handle toward the rear to open the door.

i For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the associated section.

Closing

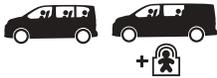
From outside



- ☞ Pull the handle toward you, then to the front, and, if necessary, lock the vehicle.

2

From inside



☞ Push the handle forward to close the door, and, if necessary, lock the vehicle.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the associated section.



- If a sliding side door is not fully closed:
- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
 - vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

Electric sliding side door(s)

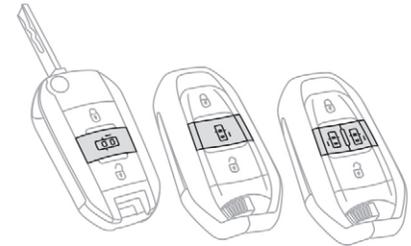
The exterior and interior door handles and the interior buttons allow the electrically powered movement of the door to be started.

Opening and closing of the doors is accompanied by an audible signal.

Unlocking

From outside

Using the remote control



☞ Door unlocked, press and hold this button until the corresponding sliding side door has opened.



- ☞ Press this button again to reverse the movement of the door.

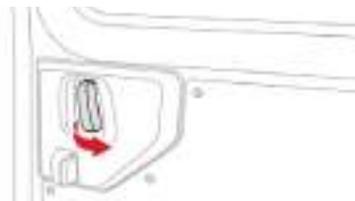
i The remote controls buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Using the handle



- ☞ Door unlocked, pull and release the handle to start the electrically powered opening of the door.
- ☞ Pull the handle again to reverse the movement of the door.

From inside Using the handle



Vehicle locked



Cab and loading area selectivity disabled.

- ☞ Pull the handle toward the rear to **fully** unlock the vehicle and start the electrically powered opening of the door.



Cabin and loading area selectivity activated.

- ☞ Pull the handle toward the rear to unlock the **loading area** and start the electrically powered opening of the door.

Vehicle unlocked



Child lock deactivated.

- ☞ Pull the handle toward the rear to start the electrically powered opening of the door.

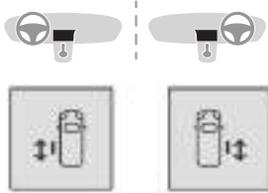
From inside, selective unlocking then opening



Cabin and loading area selectivity disabled.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control** or **Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular the total or selective unlocking, refer to the corresponding section.

Using the button(s) at the front



- ☞ To unlock the **vehicle** and start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

- i** The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:
 - the vehicle is moving,
 - the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment).

Depending on the equipment you have, the button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

From inside, selective unlocking then opening



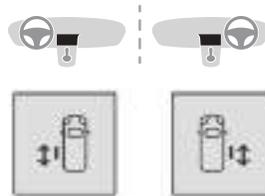
Cabin and loading area selectivity activated.

- i** For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular the total or selective unlocking, refer to the corresponding section.

- i** The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:
 - the vehicle is moving,
 - the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment).

Depending on the equipment you have, the button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

Using the button(s) at the front



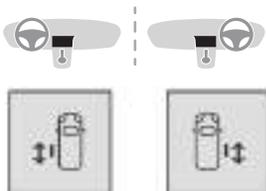
- ☞ To unlock only the **loading area**, the vehicle and start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

From inside, unlocking then opening



- i** For more information on the **child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Using the button(s) at the front



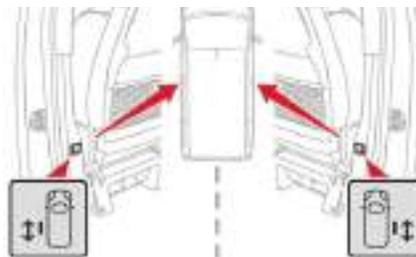
- ☞ Child lock deactivated, to unlock the vehicle and start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

i The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:

- the vehicle is moving,
- the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment),
- the child lock is on (activated).

The button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

Using the button(s) on the door pillar



- ☞ Child lock deactivated, to unlock the vehicle and start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

i The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:

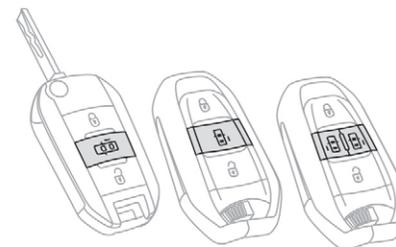
- the vehicle is moving,
- the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment),
- the child lock is on (activated).

The button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

Locking

From outside

Using the remote control



- ☞ Press and hold this button until the sliding door has closed.



- ☞ Press this button again to reverse the movement of the door.



i The remote controls buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

2

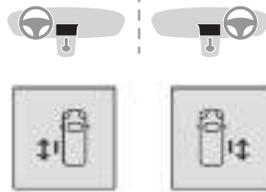
Using the handle



- ☞ Pull and release the handle to start the electrically powered opening of the door.
- ☞ Pull the handle again to reverse the movement of the door.

From inside

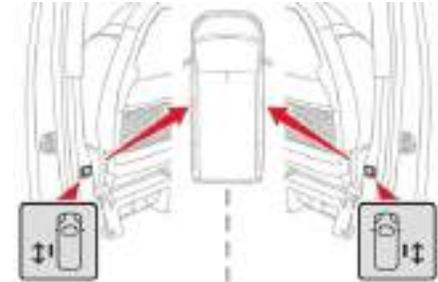
Using the button(s) at the front



- ☞ To start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

i The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if the speed of the vehicle is above 20 mph (30 km/h).

Using the button(s) on the door pillar



- ☞ To start the electrically powered opening of a door, press the button for the corresponding door.
- ☞ Pressing the button again reverses the movement of the door.

i The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if the speed of the vehicle is above 20 mph (30 km/h).



- If a sliding side door is not fully closed:
- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
 - vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

Manual or electric sliding side door(s)

! General recommendations

The doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.

For your safety and for that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.

Always check that it is safe to operate the door and in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.

The audible warning, illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message in the multifunction screen are there to remind you. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to deactivate these warnings.

Lock your vehicle when using an automatic car wash.

! Before opening or closing or performing any movement of the doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or can block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.

If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

The doors cannot be opened electrically above 2 mph (3 km/h):

- But if the doors remained open when starting, the speed must fall below 19 mph (30 km/h) before they can be closed.
- Any attempt to open a door electrically using the interior handle while driving results in it only being possible to open the door manually.
- This situation is accompanied by the audible warning, illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message in the multifunction screen. To release the door and be able to operate it again, it is necessary to stop the vehicle.

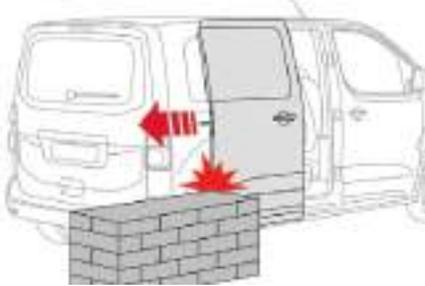
i The electric controls are inhibited in the event of an impact. Manual opening and closing remain possible.

i While starting the engine, the movement of a door is interrupted and restored once the engine is running.

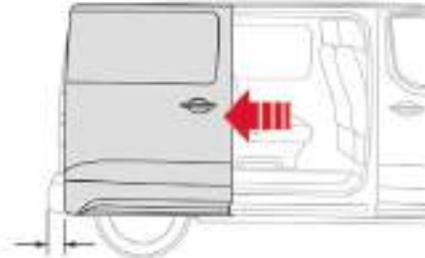
i  Depending on the engine, in Stop mode of Stop & Start, if the door is closed and you initiate opening of the door, the door opens partially and stops. When the engine changes automatically to Start mode, the door continues its movement.

2

The doors and the overall dimensions of the vehicle

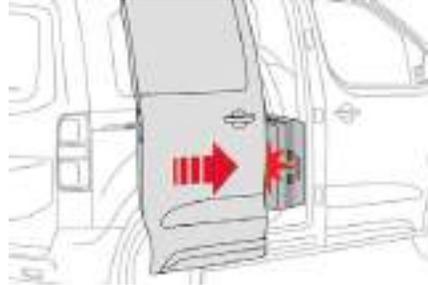


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Be sure to take this into account when you park alongside a wall, a post or a high kerb, etc.



i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

Safety / Obstacle detection with electric door(s)



The obstacle detection system is triggered when the moving door encounters an obstacle with a certain level of physical resistance.

- If an obstacle is detected while the door is closing, the door stops then opens fully.
- If an obstacle is detected while the door is opening, the door stops and then closes.
- If an obstacle is detected twice in succession during a movement of the door, it will no longer close electrically. This resets the door.

On a steep slope: a safety system slows down the movement of the door.

In any case, wait a few seconds before operating the door (close or open). Close the door manually for safety reasons. Then reinitialise the door.

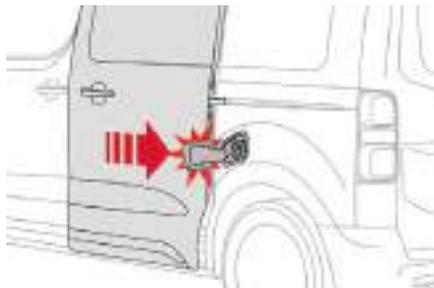
Reinitialising electric doors

If electrical operations no longer work, the doors must be closed manually then reinitialised:

- ☞ Fully close the door(s) manually.
- ☞ Fully open the door(s) manually.
- ☞ Close the door(s) electrically.

On completion of this procedure, electric operation of the doors is restored. However, if a problem persists following this procedure, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fuel filler flap



! If your vehicle is equipped with one, do not open the sliding left side door when the fuel filler flap is open, otherwise there is a risk that the fuel filler flap and the sliding door will be damaged and the person filling up will be injured.

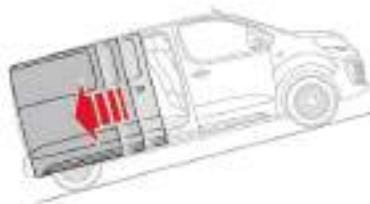
! If the fuel filler flap is open and you open the left side door, a mechanism prevents it being opened.

The door can be opened half way however.

With a mechanical door, close the fuel filler flap again to regain use of the door.

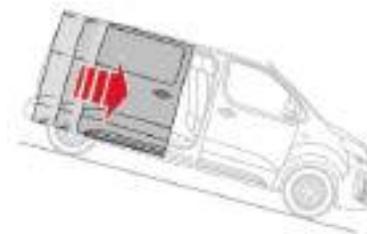
With an electrical door, in order to be able to use it correctly, close the fuel filler flap then press an opening button.

On a steep slope



It is possible to open and close doors electrically on slopes of up to a 20% gradient. However, if your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing up, open the door with care. The door may open more quickly due to the incline.

On a steep slope, guide the side door manually to help it to close.



However, if your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing down, the door may not stay open and may close again jerkily with the risk of injury.

! In the case of a steep slope, the door may be driven by its own weight and as a consequence may open or close jerkily. There would not be time for action at the electric controls to take effect.

There would not be time for the obstacle detection system to react.

Take care not to leave the vehicle on a steep slope with the door(s) open without supervision. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Hands-free sliding side door(s)



By keeping the remote control on your person and with a movement of your foot, the system unlocks and opens the sliding side door or closes and locks it.

The remote control must be located at the rear of the vehicle, at least 30 cm but no more than about 2 m from the vehicle.

- i** The automatic locking after closing the door is programmable in the vehicle configuration menu.

! Before making the movement with your foot, ensure that you are steady and well positioned, so that you do not lose your balance (rain, snow, ice, mud, etc.). Take care not to touch the exhaust tailpipe when making the movement with your foot – risk of burns.



- ☞ Put your foot beneath the corner of the rear bumper, then move your foot at normal speed with a side sweep movement.

The sensor detects your foot approaching and leaving and triggers opening or closing of the side door.

i Make the movement without interruption and do not repeat it immediately afterwards or several times. If the door does not open, wait about 2 seconds before trying again. Do not leave your foot in the air.

Opening



With "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**" activated in the vehicle configuration menu.

- ☞ With the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your foot under the corner of the rear bumper, on the side you want to open the door.

i Confirmation that the door is going to open is signalled by the direction indicators flashing for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal. The movement of the door is reversed if you pass your foot under the bumper during operation of the door. If fitted to your vehicle, the electric door mirrors unfold on unlocking the vehicle.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular the total or selective unlocking, refer to the corresponding section.



If the vehicle is locked, it is unlocked before opening the door.



Cabin and loading area selectivity disabled.

If the vehicle is locked, it is unlocked before opening the door.



Cabin and loading area selectivity activated.

If the vehicle is locked, the **loading area** is unlocked before opening the door.

Locking



With "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**" activated in the vehicle configuration menu.

e With the remote control on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your foot under the corner of the rear bumper, on the side you want to close the door.

Once the door has closed, the vehicle locks itself automatically, if "**Hands-free tailgate access self-locking**" has been selected in the vehicle configuration menu.

i Confirmation that the door is going to close is signalled by the direction indicators flashing for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal. The movement of the door is reversed if you pass your foot under the bumper during operation of the door. If fitted to your vehicle, the electric door mirrors fold on locking the vehicle.

Deactivation

By default, hands-free access is activated. The function can be deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic locking

The vehicle locks itself following the hands-free closing of a sliding door. The automatic locking can be deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

- i** If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**".

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**".

Then, if you want automatic locking after closing the door, activate/deactivate "**Hands-free tailgate access self-locking**".

Operating fault

An audible signal repeated three times indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

i If the "**Hands-free tailgate access self-locking**" option is selected in the vehicle menu and after closing the door, make sure that the vehicle is locked.

This is because locking will not take place:

- if the ignition is on,
- if one of the doors or the tailgate is open,
- if a Keyless Entry and Starting remote control is inside the vehicle.

If a number of gestures with your foot have no effect, wait a few seconds before starting again.

The system is automatically deactivated in heavy rain or with accumulations of snow. If it does not work, check that the remote control is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic pollution (smartphone, etc.).

Operation may be affected if using a prosthetic leg.

This system may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

- i** The side door may open or close erratically if:
- your vehicle is fitted with a towbar,
 - you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
 - you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
 - you load or unload bicycles on a bicycle carrier,
 - you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
 - an animal approaches the bumper,
 - you are washing your vehicle,
 - a service is being carried out on your vehicle,
 - you change a wheel.



To avoid unwanted operation, keep the key away from the detection zone or deactivate the function in the vehicle configuration menu.



To avoid unwanted operation, keep the key away from the detection zone (also from the boot's interior sides) or deactivate the function in the vehicle configuration menu.

- !** Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct opening or closing of the doors.
Be aware of children when operating the doors.

Side-hinged rear doors

The side-hinged rear doors are asymmetrical. The left-hand door is fitted with a lock.

From outside



- ☞** After unlocking the vehicle (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment), pull the door handle.

- i** For more information on the **Key, Remote control** or **Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

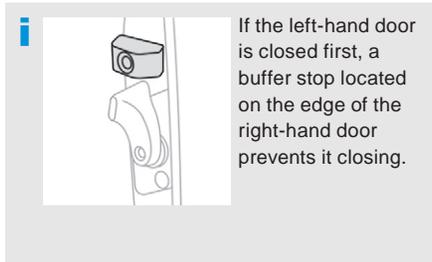
2



- ☞ After first opening the left-hand door, pull the lever **A** towards you to open the right-hand door.

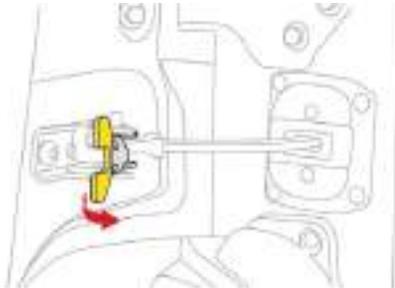
Closing

- ☞ First close the right-hand door, then the left-hand door.



- If the left-hand door is not fully closed (the right-hand door is not detected):
- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
 - vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

- ☞ Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

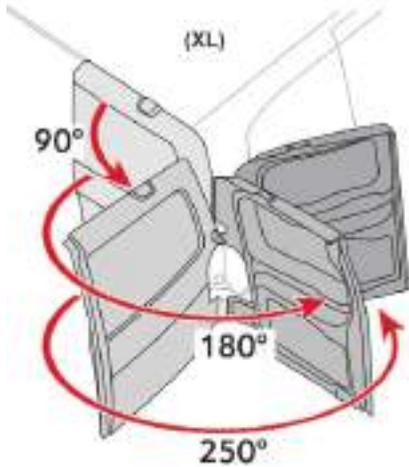
The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.



Opening to approximately 250°

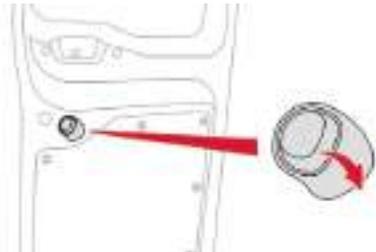


If you have them, the hinges include three notches that allow the door to be held in the open position at 90°, 180° or 250°.



☞ Open the door to the desired position.

From inside Unlocking



Cabin and loading area
selectivity disabled and vehicle
locked.

☞ Twist this handle down to **fully** unlock the
vehicle and open the right-hand door.



Cabin and loading area
selectivity activated and vehicle
locked.

☞ Twist this handle down to unlock the
loading area and open the right-hand door.



Door or vehicle unlocked.

☞ Twist this handle down to open the right-
hand door.



Vehicle locked.



☞ Twist this handle down to **fully** unlock the
vehicle and open the right-hand door.



Vehicle unlocked.



☞ Twist this handle down to open the right-
hand door.



Vehicle locked and child lock off
(disabled).

☞ Twist this handle down to **fully** unlock the
vehicle and open the right-hand door.



Vehicle unlocked and child lock
disabled.

☞ Twist this handle down to open the right-
hand door.

i If the child lock is on (enabled), the handle
is inoperative.

i For more information on the **Child lock**,
refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

☞ First close the right-hand door, then the left-
hand door.

Tailgate Opening



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle with the key, the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting, pull the handle, then raise the tailgate.

i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing



- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle then push it home to fully close it.



If the tailgate is not fully closed:

- vehicle stationary and the engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

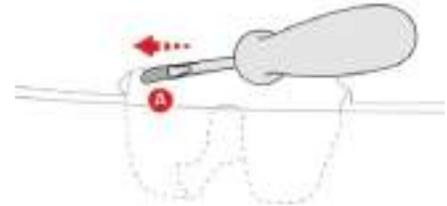
i For more information on the **Key, Remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting**, and in particular unlocking the vehicle, refer to the associated section.

Backup control

It allows the mechanical unlocking of the tailgate in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking

- ☞ If fitted to your vehicle and, if necessary, fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside.

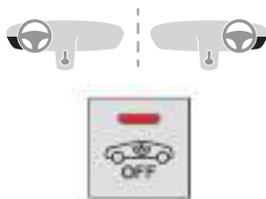


- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the tailgate will remain locked.

Alarm



This system protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

! Self-protection function

The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Exterior perimeter

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open one of the doors or the bonnet.

Volumetric



The system only checks the variation in volume inside the **cab**.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or enters the **cab**.

It will not be activated if someone enters the **loading area**.



The system checks for any variation in the volume of the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

i If your vehicle is fitted with the programmable heating/ventilation, volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system.

For more information on **Programmable Heating/Ventilation**, refer to the associated section.

Total protection

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

☞ Lock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following a command to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds. If an opening element (door, tailgate or side-hinged doors, bonnet, etc.) is not closed fully after locking with the "remote control", the vehicle is not locked but monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds.

2

Deactivation



- ☞ Press this unlocking button on the remote control.

or

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle locks itself automatically (this occurs after 30 seconds if none of the doors is opened), the monitoring system is reactivated automatically.

Protection – exterior perimeter monitoring alone

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- passengers on board the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport on a ship or ferry.

Volumetric monitoring

Deactivation



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is lit continuously.

- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.



- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp flashes once per second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation



- ☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp goes off.



- ☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This results in sounding the siren and flashing the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.



- When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Remote control failure

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key (integrated with the remote control if equipped with Keyless Entry and Starting) in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integrated with the remote control if equipped with Keyless Entry and Starting) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction



When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the button's indicator lamp indicates a fault in the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

This function is either not available, an option or is standard.

2 minutes after the last opening element (door or boot) is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

Electric windows



- 1 Left electric window control.
- 2 Right electric window control.

Manual mode

Press or pull the control gently, without exceeding the resistance point. The window stops as soon as the control is released.

Automatic mode

Press or pull the control fully, beyond the resistance point. The window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electrical functions of the electric windows are deactivated:

- approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off,
- after one of the front doors is opened, if the ignition is off.

Safety anti-pinch

If your vehicle is fitted with the safety anti-pinch function, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers.

In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the control until the window opens completely. Within 4 seconds, pull the control until the window closes.

The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

Reset

Following reconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch safety function must be reinitialised.

- ☞ Lower the window fully, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed.
- ☞ Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- ☞ Continue to pull the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

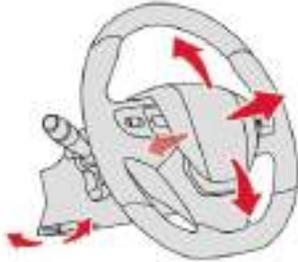
! Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.

When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Steering wheel adjustment



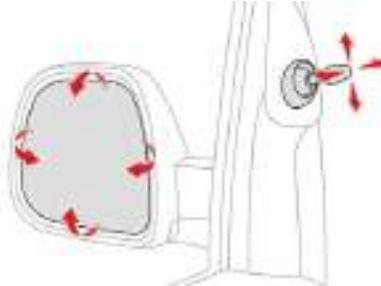
- ☞ **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Manual adjustment

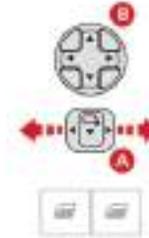


Move the lever in any of the four directions to adjust it.

When the vehicle is parked, the door mirrors can be folded in manually.

If the mirror unit has come out of its initial position, with the vehicle stationary, push it back into place manually or use the control. There is no risk of breakage, even in frosty weather.

Electric adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to its centre position.

Electric folding

If your vehicle is fitted with this function, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



- ☞ Place switch **A** in the centre position.
- ☞ Pull control **A** back.

From the outside, lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.

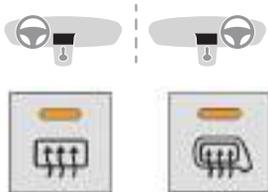
3

Electric unfolding

Door mirrors are unfolded electrically with the remote control or key when the vehicle is unlocked. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control backwards in the centre position.

- Folding/unfolding during locking/unlocking can be disabled. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If necessary, the mirrors can be folded in manually.

Heated mirrors



If your vehicle is so equipped:



- Press the heated rear window button.

or



- Press the heated mirror button.

For more information on **Demisting and defrosting the rear window**, refer to the associated section.

- As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights from other vehicles, etc.

Manual model



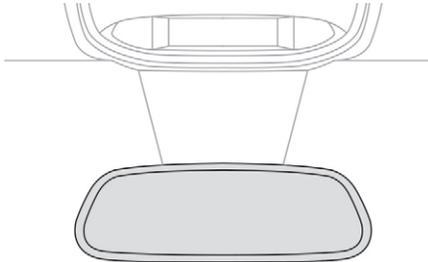
Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Front seats with manual adjustments

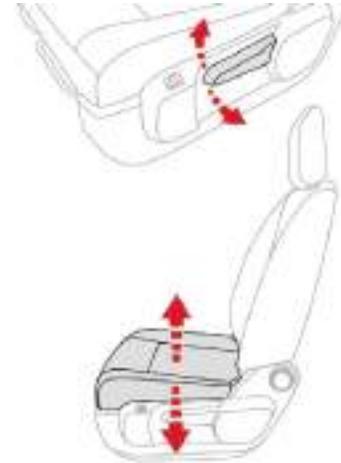
! For reasons of safety, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Forwards-backwards



☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height



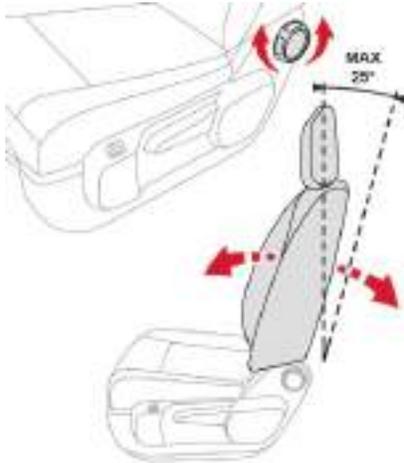
☞ If fitted to your vehicle, pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required to obtain the position required.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

3

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if they are in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.



☞ Pull the control fully up and move the backrest forward or backward.

Lumbar



☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Table position for the driver's and/or the front passenger seat backrest



On the front passenger side, this position allows long objects to be carried.
On the driver's side, this position allows rear passengers to be helped out of the vehicle (by the emergency services).

! Check that there is no object that could interfere with the movement of a seat, both above and below.

☞ Place the head restraint in the low position, and if fitted to your vehicle, raise the armrest and fold the table on the back of the seat.

i Deactivation of the passenger front airbag is recommended.



☞ Pull the control fully up and tip the backrest forward.

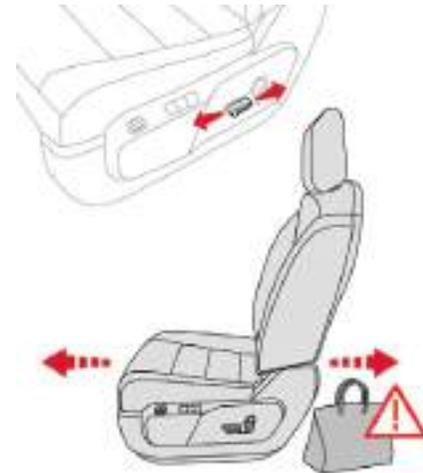
To return to the normal position, pull the control up to release the backrest, then pull the backrest up to its raised position.

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest can turn into projectiles.

Electric front seat

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

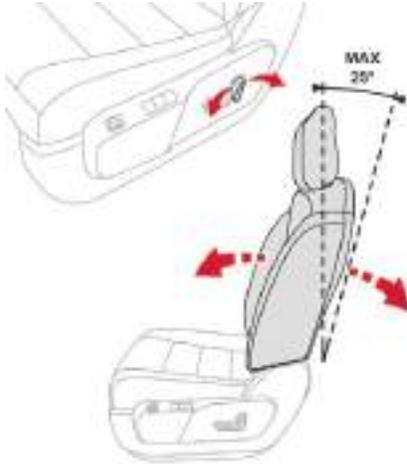
Forwards-backwards



☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

3

Backrest angle



- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

Cushion height



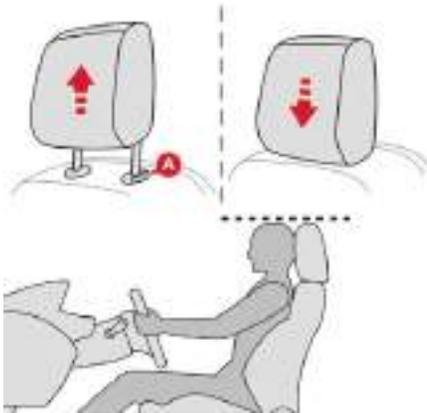
- ☞ Tilt the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired height.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Additional adjustments

Adjusting the height of the head restraint

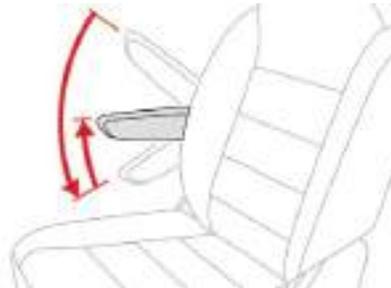


If fitted to your vehicle.

- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the apertures keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press on lug **A** and on the head restraint at the same time.

! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact. **The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

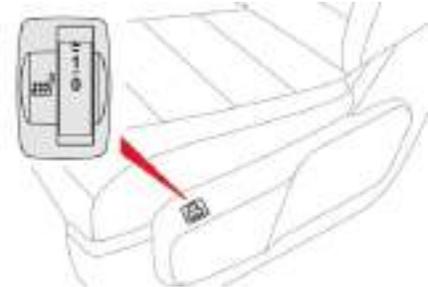
Armrest



The armrest has notches.

- ☞ Pull the armrest fully up
- ☞ Lower it fully down.
- ☞ Raise the armrest to the desired position.

Heated seats control



3

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- ☞ Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

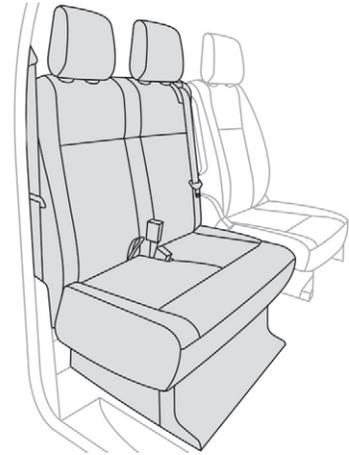
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

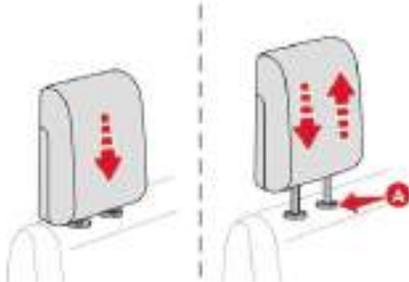
2-seat front bench seat

If applicable, it is fixed and has a seat belt integral with the backrest for the seat next to the driver seat.



For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjusting the height of the head restraint

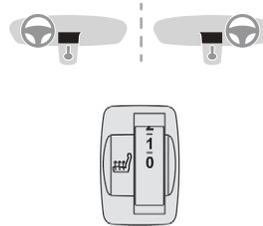


- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the apertures keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press on the lug **A** and on the head restraint at the same time.

! The headrest has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the headrest is level with the top of the head.
 Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

Heated bench seat

With the engine running, the bench seat cushions can be heated.



- ☞ Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0:** off.
- 1:** low.
- 2:** medium.
- 3:** high.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
 Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.
 When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

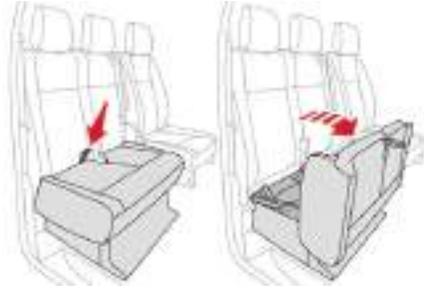
To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Under-seat storage



If your vehicle is so equipped, a storage space is provided under the seat.

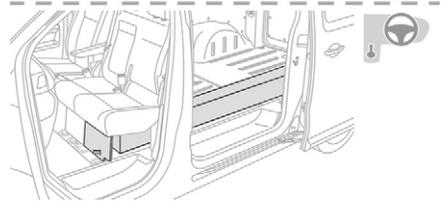
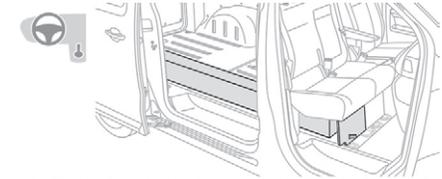
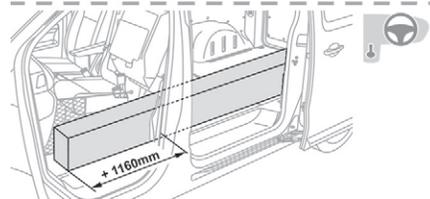
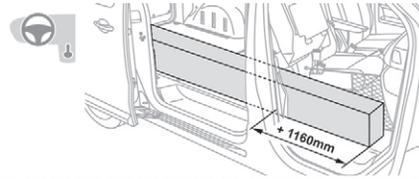
- ☞ Pull the strap to tip the seat.

Moduwork



The side seat of the bench seat can be folded onto the backrest to create a loading area inside the cab.

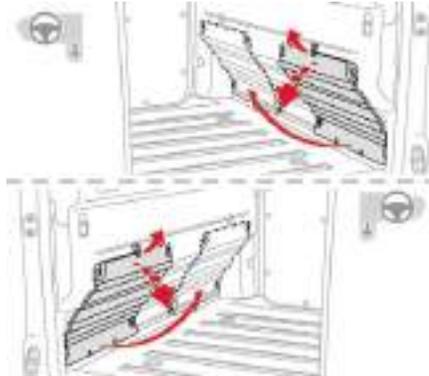
A removable flap on the partition can be removed to leave room for long objects.



i When the flap is removed, you can load long objects underneath the side seat.

Removable flap

Remove the flap

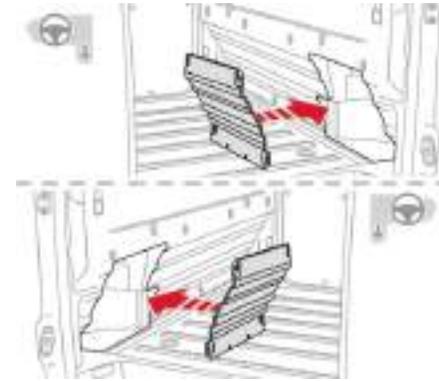


- ☞ While holding the flap with one hand, turn the control at the top of the flap with the other hand to release it.
- ☞ Lower the flap to remove it from its housing.

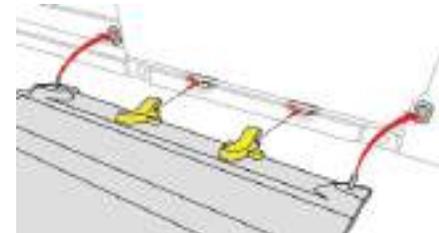


- ☞ Stow it behind the driver's seat, clipping it into the attachment lugs.
- ☞ Turn the control at the top of the flap to release it.

Put the fuel filler flap back on



- ☞ Tilt the fuel filler flap, yellow hinges pointing downwards.



- ☞ Put the hinges in their housing then press back and down (to avoid vibrations).

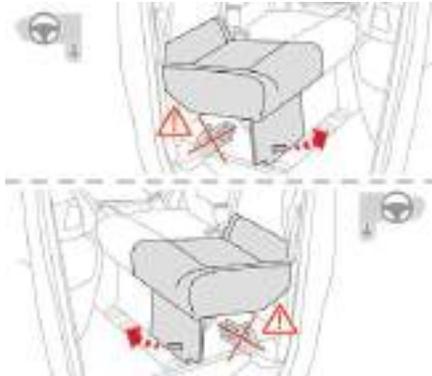
3

Ease of use and comfort

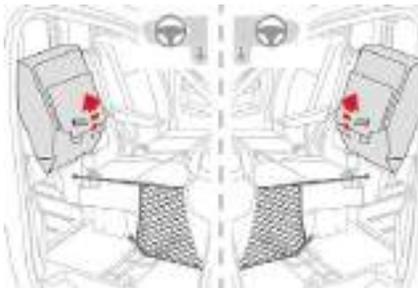
- ☞ With one hand lift the fuel filler flap to close it again then with the other hand turn the control at the top of the flap to block it.

Folding seat

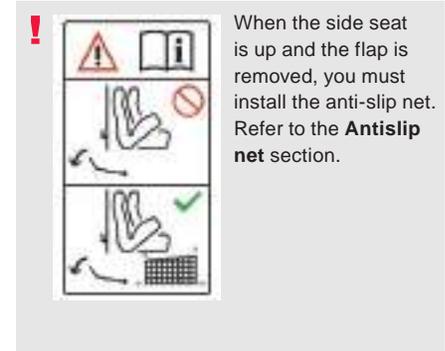
Raising the seat



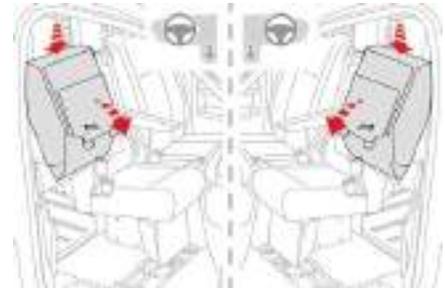
- ☞ With one hand, give a firm forward pull on the strap to unlock the seat.



- ☞ A ram lifts the seat against the backrest.



Lowering the seat



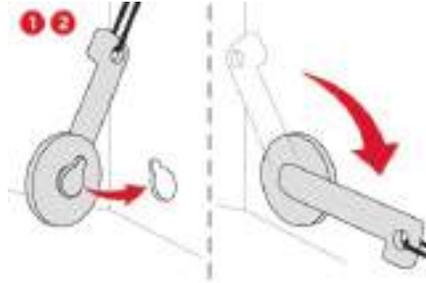
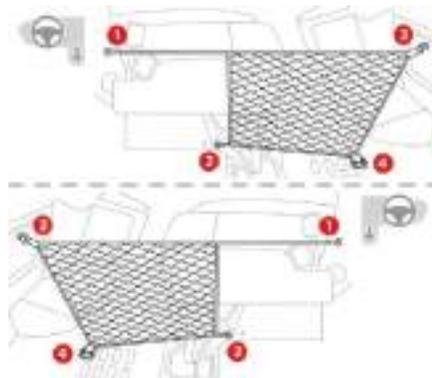
- ☞ Remove the net.
- ☞ To fit the seat back into place, press firmly on the top of the seat with one hand to lower the seat until it locks into the seat position.



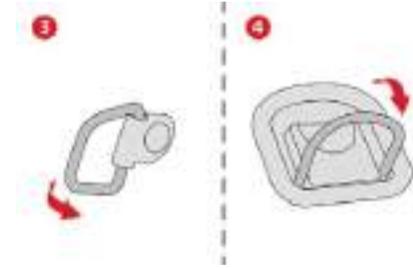
Ensure that no object or passenger feet could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

Antislip net

Installing the net



- ☞ Put the first attachment into the upper cut-out **1**, located beneath the folded seat. Keep the attachment pressed against the structure, then turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.
- ☞ Put the second attachment into the lower cut-out **2**, located on the seat base. Keep the attachment pressed against the structure, then turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.



- ☞ Lash the first hook to ring **3**, located in the glove box.
- ☞ Lash the first hook to ring **4**, located in the glove box.

Removing the net

- ☞ Remove the hooks from rings **4** and **3**.
- ☞ Remove lower fastener **2** then top fastener **1**, turning them by a quarter turn (anti-clockwise) to unlock them.

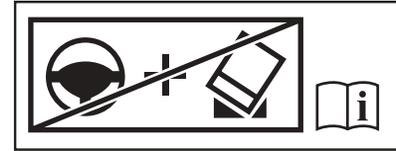
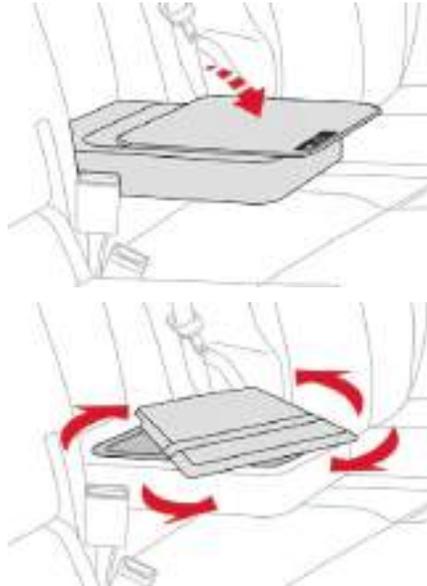
3

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads inside the vehicle are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision. All loads must be appropriately secured to prevent or minimise displacement and prevent injury. Install the antislip net (delivered with the vehicle) when the seat is raised and the partition flap removed. Never use the net for any other applications. Regularly check the net. When signs of wear or tear appear, contact a CITROËN dealer to have it replaced by a net that meets the specifications required by CITROËN for your vehicle. Always fit the removable flap back into place when you are not carrying any long loads.

Swivelling writing table

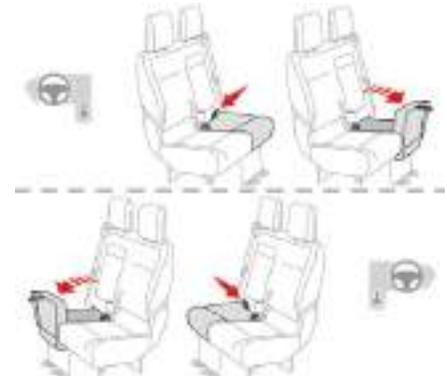
As applicable, the cushion of the bench seat middle seat can be tilted to form a swivelling working table top, thus creating a mobile desk (with the vehicle stationary).

- ☞ Pull the handle located at the top of the backrest cushion.



! Never use the table while the vehicle is being driven. Any object on the tray will become a dangerous projectile that could cause injury in the event of sudden braking or collision.

Central seat storage

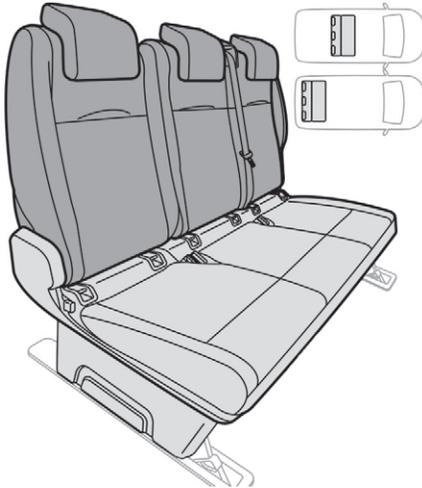


- ☞ Pull the strap to tip the seat.

Fixed one-piece bench seat



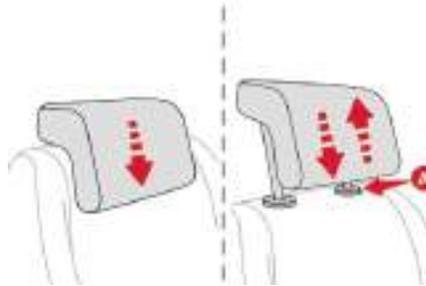
The different levels of equipment and adjustments described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.



The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or foldable (table position).

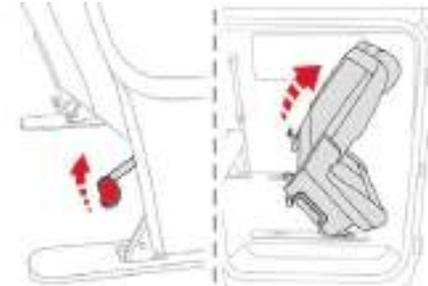
i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Angled head restraints



- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it up until it engages in its notches.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press lug **A** and pull the head restraint upward.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the apertures keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press on lug **A** and on the head restraint at the same time.

Access to row 3

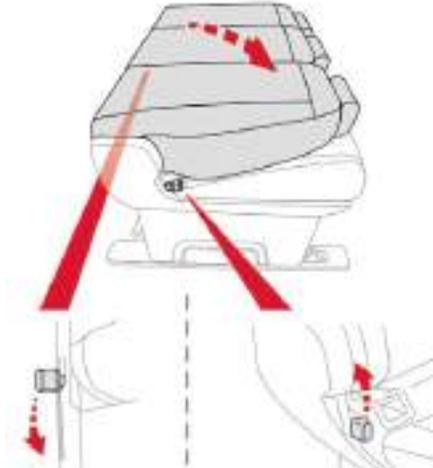


- ☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- ☞ To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place.

i It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat for access to row 3.

Folding the backrest to the table position

- ☞ Put the head restraints into the low position.

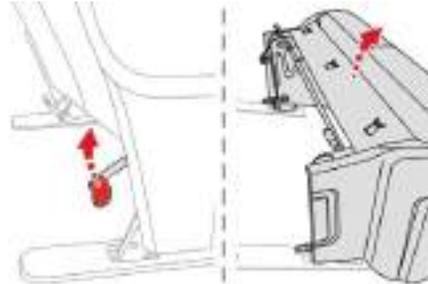


- ☞ From the rear, lower the lever to release the backrest.
- ☞ From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
- ☞ Fold the backrest onto the cushion.
- ☞ To return the backrest to its normal position, raise the handle and pull the backrest up.

! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

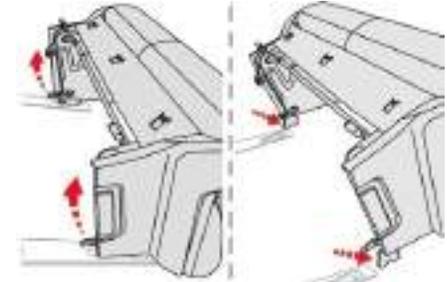
- ☞ If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.



- ☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- ☞ To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place.

Removing a seat

- ☞ If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.
- ☞ Tip the seat forward.



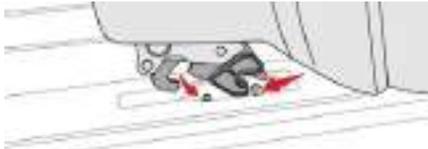
- ☞ Release the front feet using the handles.
- ☞ Disengage the seat from its anchorages.
- ☞ Remove the seat.

! If removing and storing a bench seat out of the vehicle, ensure that it is placed in a clean area, so as to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.

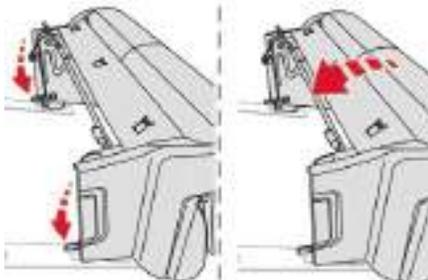
! The bench seat is not designed for any other purpose than on-board the vehicle. It has mechanisms and may not operate correctly if used inappropriately or dropped.

Refitting

- ☞ Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorages and preventing the feet locking into place.

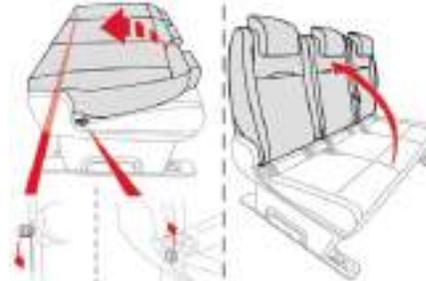


- ☞ Engage the front feet in the anchorages on the floor (as shown above).



- ☞ Lock the front feet using the handles.
- ☞ Tip the seat toward the rear until the rear feet lock into place.

! Be aware of the feet of passengers when refitting a seat.



- ☞ If your vehicle has the facility, pull the control and raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the lever).

i Check that the seat has correctly engaged in its anchorages on the floor when returned to the seating position.



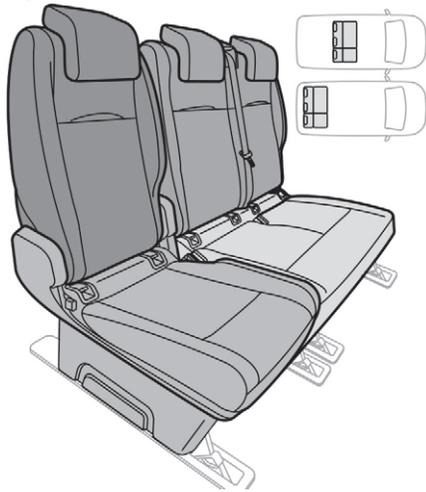
! Ensure that no object, or the feet of a passenger seated at the rear, could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

3

Fixed rear seat and bench seat



The different levels of equipment and adjustments described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.

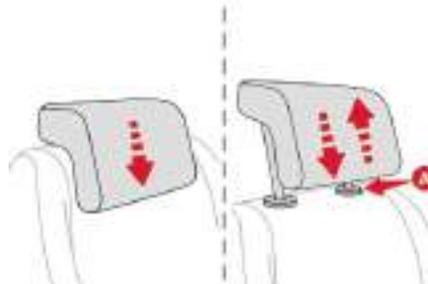


The seat has a backrest that may be fixed or folding (table position).

The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or foldable (table position).

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

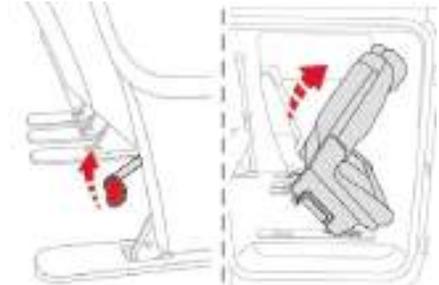
Angled head restraints



- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it up until it engages in its notches.
- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press lug **A** and pull the head restraint upward.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the apertures keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press on lug **A** and on the head restraint at the same time.

Access to row 3

(example of an individual seat)

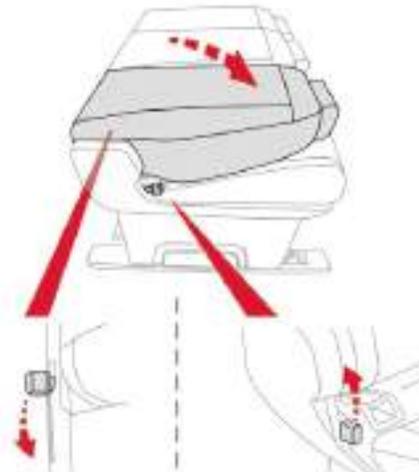


- ☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- ☞ To return the seat to the normal position, unfold the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

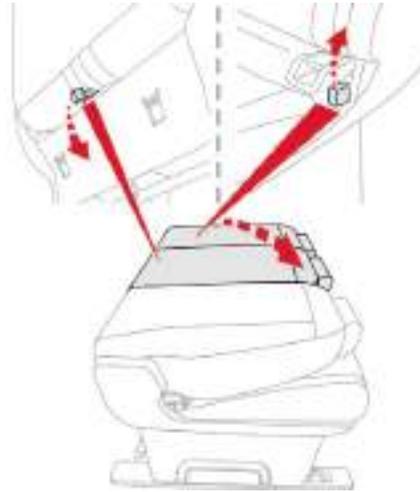
i It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat for access to row 3.

Folding the backrest to the table position

- ☞ Put the head restraints into the low position.



- ☞ From the rear, lower the lever to release the backrest.
- ☞ From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.



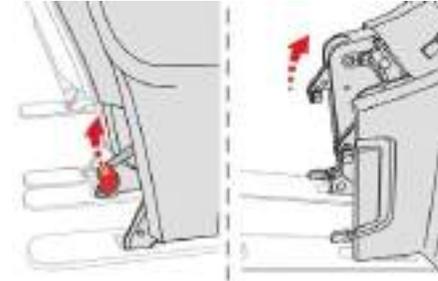
- ☞ Fold the backrest onto the cushion.
- ☞ To return the backrest to the normal position, raise the lever and pull the backrest up (from the rear, lower the lever).

! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

(example of an individual seat)

- ☞ If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.



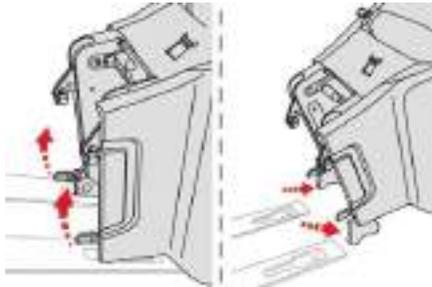
- ☞ Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
- ☞ To return the seat to the normal position, unfold the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

3

Removing a seat

(example of an individual seat)

- ☞ If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.
- ☞ Tip the seat forward.



- ☞ Release the front feet using the handles.
- ☞ Disengage the seat from its anchorages.
- ☞ Remove the seat by the sliding door in row 2 or from the rear in row 3.

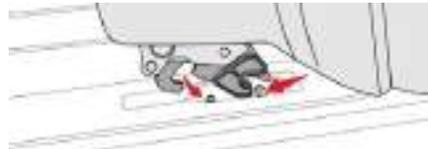
! If removing and storing a seat (or bench seat) out of the vehicle, ensure that it is placed in a clean area, so as to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.

! The seat (or bench seat) is not designed for any other purposes than on-board the vehicle. It has mechanisms and may be damaged if used improperly or if dropped.

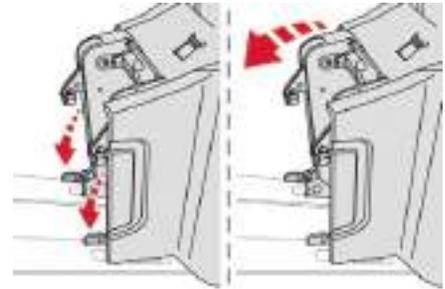
Refitting

(example of an individual seat)

- ☞ Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorages and preventing the feet locking into place.

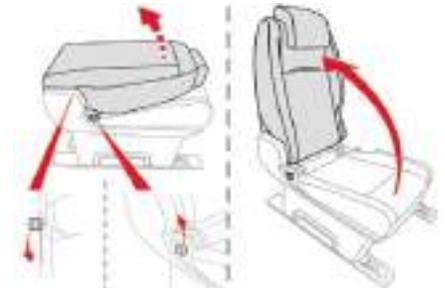


- ☞ Engage the front feet in the anchorages on the floor (as shown above).



- ☞ Lock the front feet using the handles.
- ☞ Unfold the seat toward the rear until the rear feet lock into place.

Be aware of the feet of passengers when refitting a seat.



Check that the seat has correctly engaged in its anchorages on the floor when returned to the seating position.

- i** If fitted to your vehicle, pull the control to raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the lever).



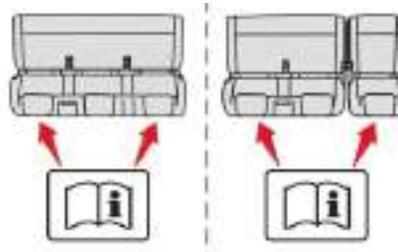
- !** Ensure that no object, or the feet of a passenger seated at the rear, could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

Precautions for the seats and bench seats

Following the various handling operations:

- do not remove a head restraint without storing it and fixing it to a support,
- check that the seat belts are always accessible to the passenger and easy to fasten,
- a passenger must not take their seat without adjusting the seat's head restraint correctly and adjusting and fastening the seat belt.

Loading luggage or objects behind the row 3 seat and bench seat



If you want to load luggage onto the backrests in row 3 while in the table position, the backrests in row 2 must also be in the table position.

Labels



When driving, carrying a passenger is prohibited:

- in rows 2 and 3, in the outer right seat, if the bench is in the fully folded position,
- on the centre seat if the outer right seat is in the fully folded position.
- in row 3 if the backrest in front (row 2) is in the table position.
- in row 3 if the seat/bench in front (row 2) is in the fully folded position.

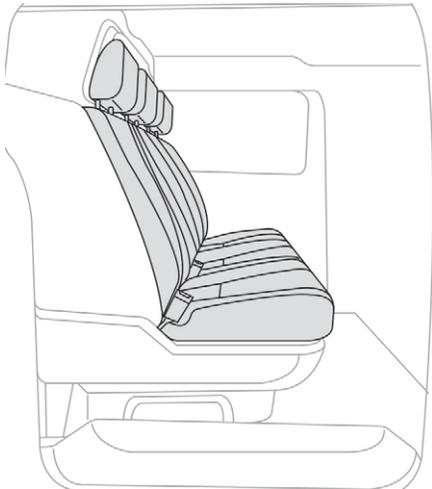
3

Fixed crew cab



It comprises a fixed bench seat, seat belts, storage compartments (depending on equipment) and side windows. It is separated from the **loading area** by a high-strength partition offering comfort and safety.

Rear bench seat



This ergonomic bench seat has three seats. The two outer seats are fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

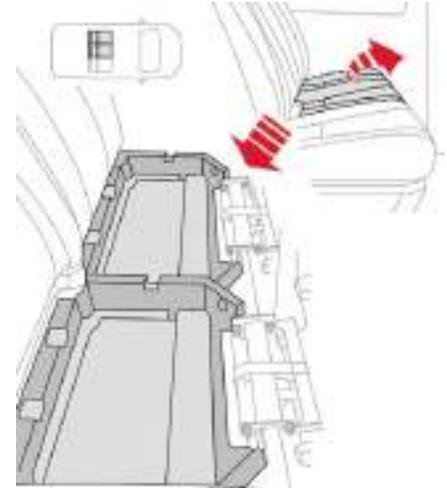
i For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the associated section.

Storage compartment

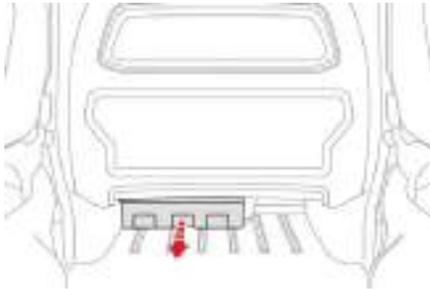


If applicable, a storage compartment is available at the front, underneath the bench seat.

Under seat storage wells



If applicable, they are located underneath the centre and outer left seats. To gain access from the cab, tilt the required seat forwards.



The wells can be disassembled* and removed* from the back to stow bulky objects underneath the bench seat.

- i** Do not attach anything to the cabin fixing structure.
- Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate.
- In the rear, the **loading area** is intended for carrying goods only.
- You are advised to place the goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the **loading area** (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor.
- The rear seat belt fittings are not designed to secure the load.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Crew cab, folding



It comprises a folding bench seat, seat belts and side windows.

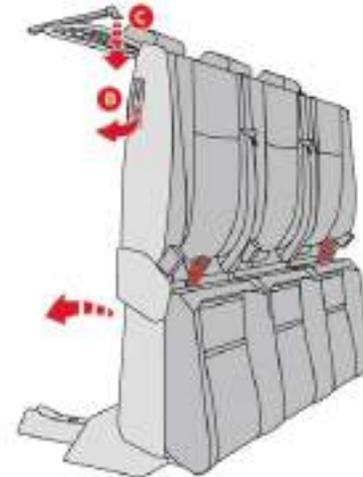
It is separated from the **loading area** by a bench seat with a high-strength partition offering comfort and safety.

Folded position



- ☞ Using one hand, pull strap **A** upwards to fold the bench seat.
- ☞ Using handle **B**, accompany the movement of the bench seat until it locks in the folded position.

Bench seat position



- ☞ To put the bench seat back in place, pull lever **C** to unlock the bench seat then release the lever.
- ☞ Then using only handle **B**, guide the descent of the backrest to tip the assembly until it locks in the bench seat position.

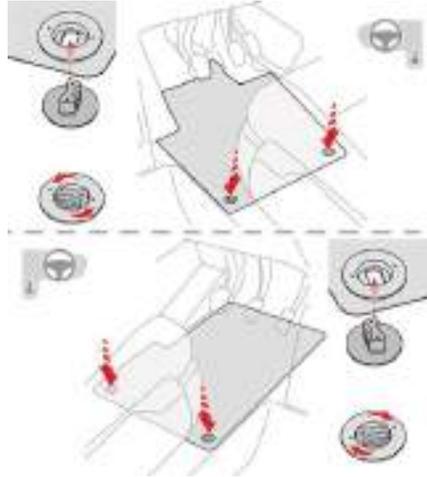
3

! Never put your hand underneath the bench seat to guide it downwards, you could have your fingers trapped. Ensure there are no objects or feet beneath the bench seat or obstructing the fixation system, preventing the assembly from being correctly locked.

! Do not attach anything to the cab fixing structure. Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate. In the rear, the load space is intended for carrying goods only. You are advised to place the goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the load space (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor. The rear seat belt fittings are not designed to secure the load.

Interior fittings

Mats Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ refit the fixings by turning them by a quarter turn,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ Refit the mounts by turning them by a quarter turn,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

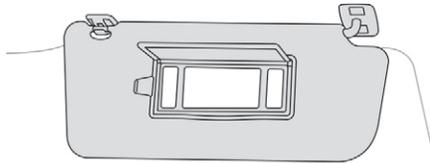
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter. The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Sun visor

The sun visors provide protection from the sun from the front or the side and have an illuminated vanity mirror (depending on version).

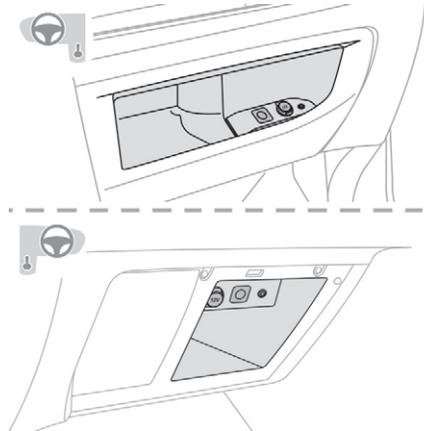
A pocket is provided on the driver's sun visor to hold toll tickets, receipts, etc.



- ☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

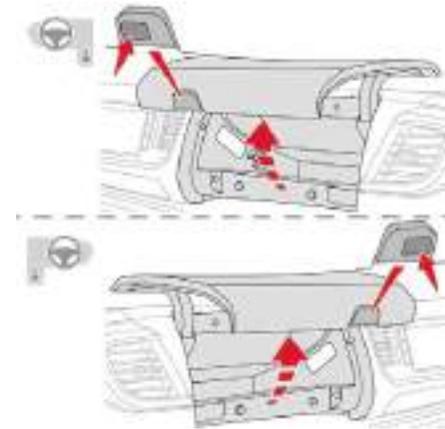
Glove box

It houses the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch and can hold a water bottle, the vehicle's documentation, etc.



Storage compartment

It can hold a water bottle, the vehicle's documentation, etc.



- ☞ To open the storage compartment, press the left-hand end of the control and guide the lid to its open position notch.

When so equipped, it is lit when the lid is opened.

3

! When driving, keep the storage compartment closed. Otherwise there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

i Depending on marketing country, with air conditioning, it gives access to the ventilation nozzle, delivering the same air-conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

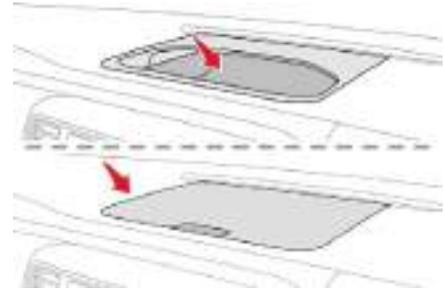
Front door pockets



! Liquids carried in an open vessel (a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Glove box, upper

This is located in the dashboard, behind the steering wheel.



Press the control to open the lid (depending on version) then guide it to its fully open position. To close it, guide the cover then press the centre gently.

Any liquid which could spill risks causing an electrical short circuit and therefore a potential fire.

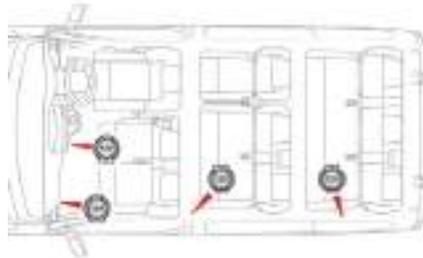
12 V accessory socket(s)

Depending on version.



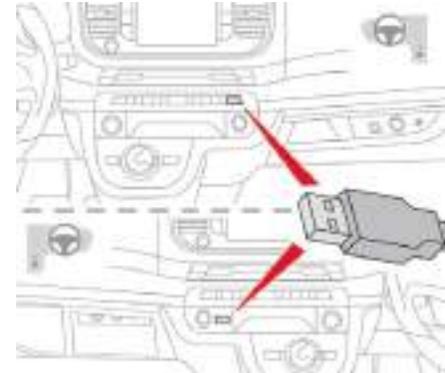
☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.



! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB port



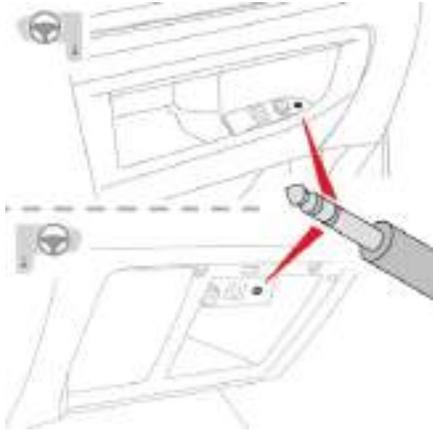
It allows the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod® type digital audio player or a USB memory stick.

It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers. You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the current drawn by the portable device exceeds the power rating of the vehicle's port. For more information on using this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

3

Auxiliary socket (JACK)



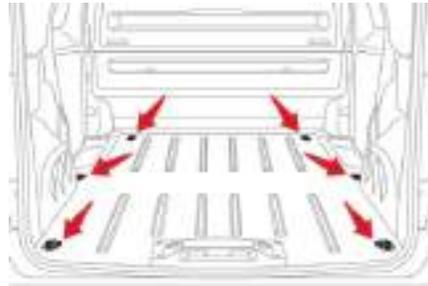
It allows the connection of a portable device so that you can listen to your music files via the vehicle's speakers.
The management of the files is done using your portable device.

i For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

Loading area fittings

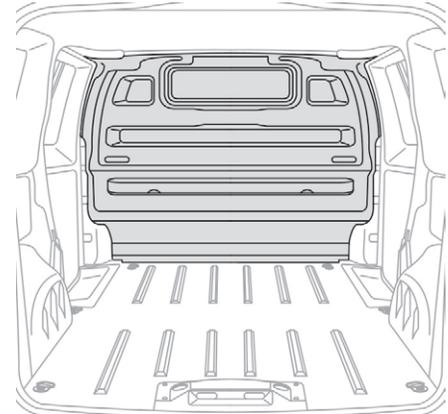
! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Stowing rings



Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to attach your loads.
As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards towards the cab as possible.
It is recommended that the load is secured firmly using the stowing rings on the floor.

Load restraint



On the floor, behind the front seats, a horizontal partition protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

Steel or glass partitions separate the loading area from the cab.

Seating area fittings

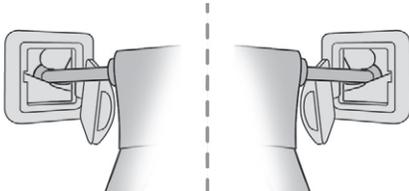


High load retaining net

This allows the use of the entire loading capacity, up to the roof:

- behind the front seats in row 1, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in rows 2 and 3 are folded or removed.
- behind the rear seats and bench seats in row 2, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in row 3 are folded or removed.

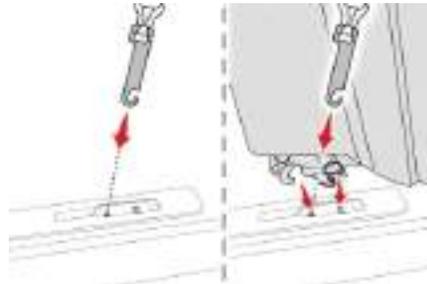
Upper fixings



- ☞ Unclip the anchorage cover in the roof on each side.

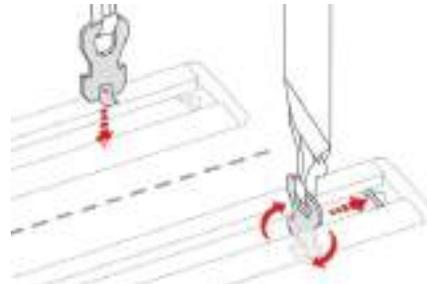
Lower fixings (behind row 1)

If your vehicle has **fixed** one-piece bench seats or seats and bench seats:



- ☞ On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages (as shown above).

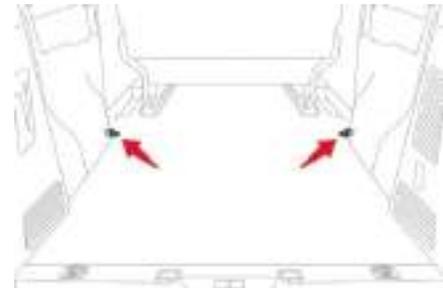
If your vehicle has seats and bench seats or individual seats on **rails**:



- ☞ On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages then turn them a quarter turn to lock them in place (as shown above).

Place them as close as possible to the end of the rail.

Lower fixings (behind row 2)



- ☞ Use the stowing rings.

3

Fit the net

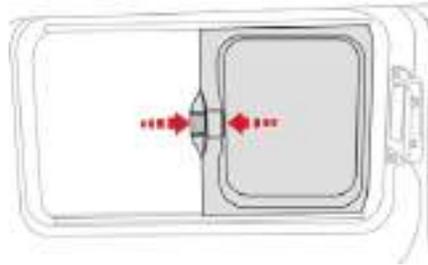
Unclip the upper fixing covers and secure the lower fixings (as previously described).

- ☞ Fold (table position) the seats and bench seats in rows 2 and 3 (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Close the rear heating and air-conditioning vents (depending on the equipment you have).
- ☞ Unroll the high load retaining net.
- ☞ Position the upper net fixings in the corresponding anchorages in the roof (first one side, then the other).
- ☞ Fully extend the straps.
- ☞ On each side, attach the bottom fixings of the net to the lower anchorages (behind row 1) or in the stowing rings (behind row 2).
- ☞ Tension the straps to extend the net.
- ☞ Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring for the strap fixing point of a child seat with Top Tether.

Windows in row 2

If fitted to your vehicle, the side windows in row 2 can be opened.



While driving, the window must be closed or secured at one of the notches.

- ☞ Squeeze the two controls then move the window sideways.

i For more information on the **Child lock for rear windows**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating



1. Air flow.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Air distribution: windscreen and side windows.
4. Air distribution: centre and side air vents.
5. Air distribution: footwells.
6. Temperature.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Air flow.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Air distribution: windscreen and side windows.
4. Air distribution: centre and side air vents.
5. Air distribution: footwells.
6. Temperature.
7. Air conditioning on/off.

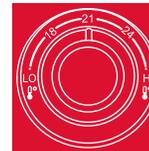
Air flow



- ☞ Turn the thumb wheel to obtain a comfortable air flow.

i If you place the air flow control to position **0** (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature



- ☞ Turn the knob from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

Air distribution



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by adding the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.



To cool the air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

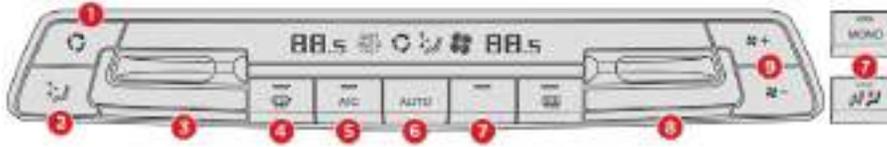
Switching off



Press this button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Recirculation of interior air.
2. Air distribution.
3. Temperature on left side.
4. Visibility programme.
5. Air conditioning On/Off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.
7. Mono or On/Off function of the heating and rear air conditioning (according to version).
8. Temperature on right side.
9. Air flow.

Automatic comfort mode

AUTO

- ☞ Press the "AUTO" button successively.

The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

**SOFT
AUTO**

Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

AUTO

Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.

**AUTO
FAST**

Provides strong and effective air flow.

i When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be automatically managed.

The "AUTO" symbol disappears if you modify a setting.

Deactivating the system



- ☞ Press this button until the fan symbol disappears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.
Temperature is no longer controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt, however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid prolonged use of air recirculation – Risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!



- ☞ Press this button to switch the system on again.

Temperature

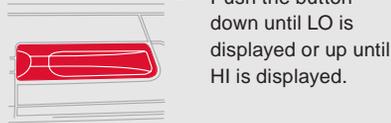
The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.



i A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal. In addition, it is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

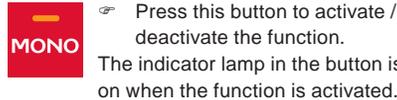
i On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.



"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).



The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Rear Heating – Air conditioning



Press this button to activate / deactivate the function.

i For more information, refer to the **Rear Heating – Air conditioning** section.

Visibility programme



Press the "visibility" button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.



Press the "visibility" button again to stop the programme.

Or



Press the "AUTO" button to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



- ☞ Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.



To cool the air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off



- ☞ Press this button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Air distribution



- ☞ Press this button successively to direct the air flow alternatively towards:

- windscreen, side windows and foot wells,
- the footwells.
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the centre vents and the footwells,
- the centre and side vents,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air flow



- ☞ Press this button to increase the air flow.



- ☞ Press this button to decrease the air flow.

The symbol for air flow (propeller) appears. It fills or empties progressively according to the value requested.

3

Recirculation of the interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of condensation on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

i This allows hot or cold air to be delivered quickly when required.



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air; the symbol appears or its indicator lamp comes on (depending on version).



☞ Press this button again to allow exterior air to enter; the symbol disappears or its indicator lamp goes off (depending on the version you have).

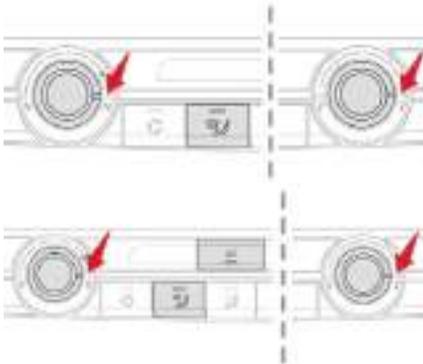
! Avoid prolonged use of air recirculation – Risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Front demist – defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

Heating or Manual air conditioning



☞ Put the air flow, temperature and distribution controls to the appropriately marked position.



☞ For air conditioning, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

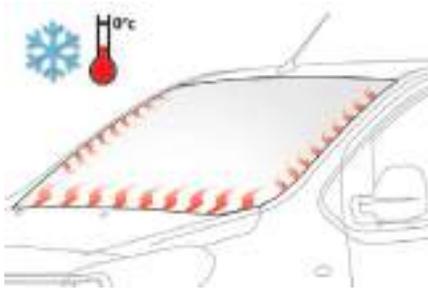
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.



☞ To stop, press this button or AUTO again.



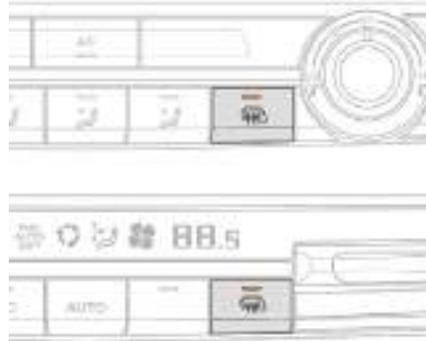
The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.



i Heated windscreen and washer jets
For more information on the **Wiper control stalk** and in particular the heated windscreen and washer jets, refer to the corresponding section.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Door mirrors demist – defrost



Switching on



i Press this button to demist/defrost the door mirrors; its indicator lamp comes on.

Switching off

Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.



i It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.

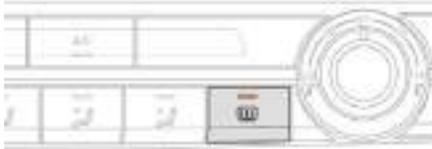


Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.



Door mirror demisting and defrosting only operates with the engine running.

Rear screen demist – defrost



Switching on



☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and the door mirrors (if your vehicle is so equipped); its indicator lamp comes on.

Switching off

Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.



☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.



Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.



Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

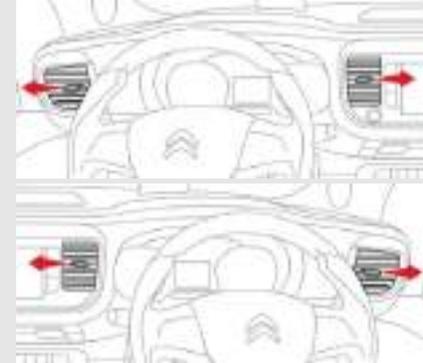
Advice

- i In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
 - ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor located in the back free from obstructions.
 - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located at the top of the windscreen; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
 - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
 - ☞ To prevent misting or deteriorating air quality inside the passenger compartment, you should not deactivate the system for too long or avoid extended operation of the air recycling system when driving.
 - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

- We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly according to the warranty and maintenance record recommendations.
 - ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Vents



To close the vent, move the control outwards. You may feel slight resistance.

3



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment. The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.



Contains fluorinated greenhouse gases R134A

Depending on the version and country of use, the air conditioning system contains R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases. Gas load 0.5 kg (+/- 0,025 kg), GWP index 1,430 t (equivalent in CO₂: 0,715 t).



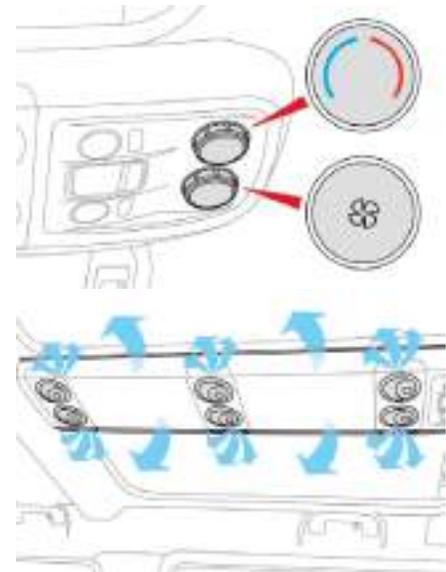
The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.



Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear Heating – Air conditioning



If your vehicle is fitted with a rear air conditioning unit, located in the roof, this system allows the distribution of air conditioned and heated air via ducting and individual outlets.

Activation/Deactivation



This button is accessible from the front, from the air conditioning control panel.



- Press this button to enable the rear controls, its indicator lamp comes on.



- Press this button again to inhibit the rear controls, its indicator lamp goes off.

Air flow



- Turn the thumbwheel to increase or decrease the air flow.

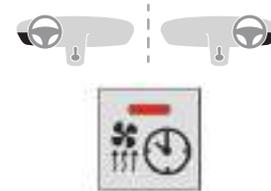
Temperature



- Turn the thumbwheel from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

- This control simultaneously adjusts the temperature and the location of the air delivery:
 - blue: the air is delivered mainly at roof level,
 - red: the air is delivered mainly by the vent located in row 3 on the right.

Programmable Heating / Ventilation



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the engine hot water circuit to heat the passenger compartment and improve defrosting.



- This indicator lamp is lit when if the system is programmed to come on for heating.
- This indicator lamp flashes while the heating is operating.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

3

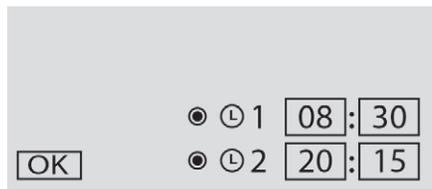
Programming

Audio system



 Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.

- Select "**Pre-heat. / Pre-ventil.**".
- Select "**Activation**" and, if necessary to program, select "**Parameters**".
- Select "**Heating**" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

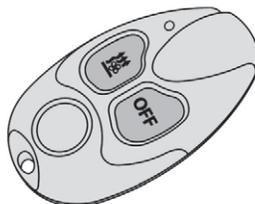


- Select:
 - the 1st clock to program/memorise the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
 - the 2nd clock to program/memorise a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

i Using these two clocks and according to season you can, for example, select one or the other start time. A message in the screen confirms your choice.

Long range remote control

The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.



Switching on

 Press and hold this button to start the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in green for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

Switching off

 Press and hold this button to stop the heating immediately.

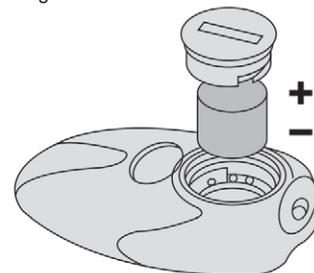
The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in red for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

i The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal. You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.

If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



- Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the bulb.

During heating



This indicator lamp flashes while the heating is in operation.

This indicator lamp goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when the heating is stopped using the remote control.

- The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the ambient conditions.

- The programmable heating system is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel in the tank. If the tank is on reserve, it is recommended that the system is not used. The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. The heating is activated provided that:
 - the battery is sufficiently charged,
 - the fuel level is adequate,
 - the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.



- Always switch off the programmable heating when refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which are not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.). Risk of fire.

Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.

Take care not to place objects in contact with these surfaces, nor touch them with your hands or any other part of your body.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

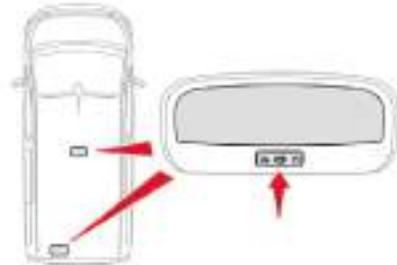
Courtesy lamp(s)



Front



Rear



Automatic operation

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch. All of the courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and for location of the vehicle using the remote control. They go off gradually after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.



Permanently on, ignition on.



Lights up when one of the front or rear doors is opened.



Permanently off.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Courtesy lights



Front



Rear



Automatic operation

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch. All of the courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and for location of the vehicle using the remote control. They go off gradually after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.



Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, the left-hand side-hinged door or the tailgate).



Permanently on, ignition on.



Row 2 and row 3: comes on when one of the rear doors or the boot is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, the left-hand side-hinged door or the tailgate).



Permanently off.

Individual reading lamp



If fitted to the vehicle, these are operated by means of a manual switch.

With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.



Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Lighting control stalk

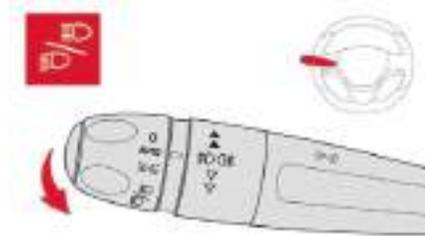
Main lighting

Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

-  Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).
-  Automatic illumination of headlamps.
-  Side lights only.
-  Dipped or main beam headlights.

Switching the headlamps (dipped beam/main beam)

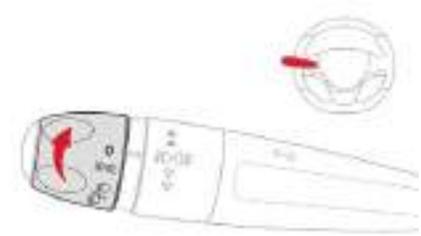


Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

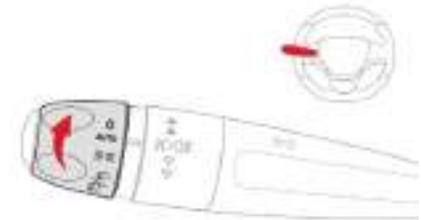
In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash"), for as long as the stalk is kept pulled.

i Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

Without AUTO lighting



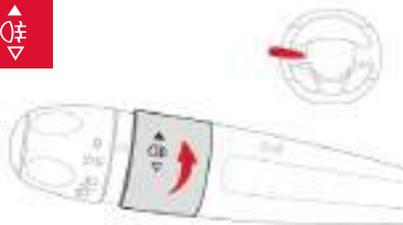
With AUTO lighting



i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Foglamps

With rear fog light only



It operates with the sidelamps on.

- ☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.
- When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.
- ☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

With front and rear foglamps



They operate with dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Rotate and release the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.
- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lights are switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

When lighting is left on

An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.

In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.

The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

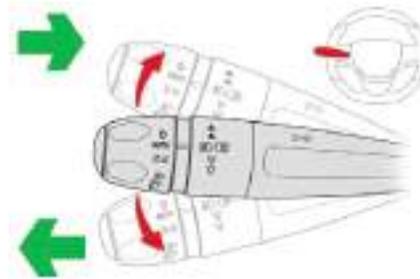
Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the fog lights and dipped headlights manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Direction indicators (flashing)

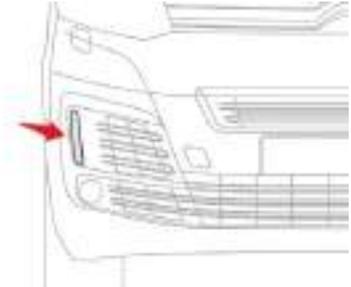


- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Front daytime running lamps (LEDs)

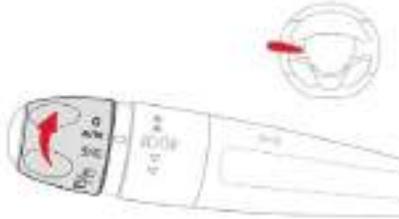


If fitted to your vehicle, they come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "0" or "AUTO".

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Switching on



- ☞ Turn the ring to the AUTO position. Activation of the function is associated with the display of a message.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Malfunction

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel associated with an audible signal and/or a message.

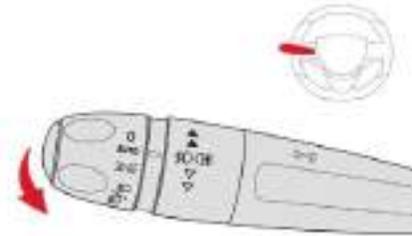
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor combined with the rain sensor and located on the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on



- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

Manual follow-me lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps is activated, if the ambient light level is low, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when switching off the ignition.

4

Programming

The activation, deactivation and selection of period the guide-me-home lighting is kept on can be set.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Follow-me-home headlamps**".

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Guide-me-home lighting**".

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote control operation of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control is in the "**AUTO**" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

Switching on



Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming

The activation, deactivation and choice of welcome lighting duration can be set.

With audio system



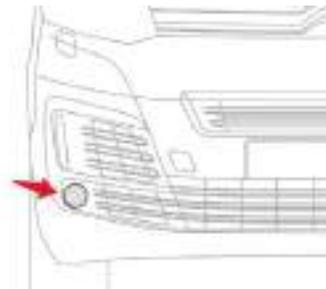
In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Welcome lighting**".

With the touch screen

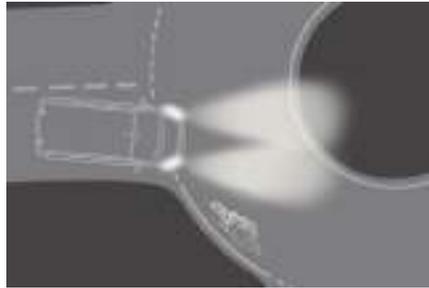


In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Welcome lighting**".

Cornering light



With dipped or main beams, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering light



With cornering light

Switching on

This system activates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This system is activated by default.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Vehicle lighting**".

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Driving lighting**".

Automatic headlamp dipping

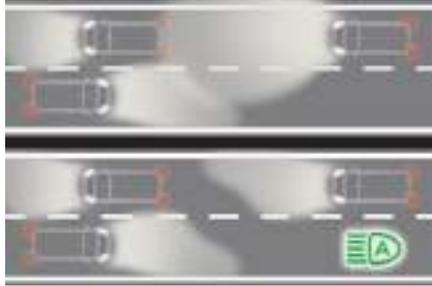
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This automatic headlamp dipping system is a driving aid.

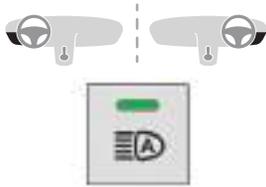
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting and for adapting its settings to the levels of brightness and visibility and the traffic conditions.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 15 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 10 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.

4



Activation / Deactivation With // Without audio system



To activate the system:



Press on this button, its indicator lamp comes on, the system is activated.

To deactivate the system:



Press on this button, its indicator lamp goes off, the system is deactivated.

With the touch screen



In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, activate/deactivate "Automatic headlamp dip".

☞ Then put the lighting control stalk ring in the "AUTO" or "dipped/main beam position".

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.



Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode.

i The driver can intervene at any time if the circumstances dictate by pulling on the lighting control stalk to switch between main and dipped beam.

i Flashing the headlamps does not deactivate the system. The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

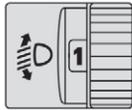
- under conditions of poor visibility (for example, snowfall, heavy rain or thick fog, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

If the fog is too dense, the system is automatically deactivated.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- road users whose lighting is obscured, such as vehicles running behind a safety barrier (on a motorway, for example),
- road users at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on twisty roads, on crossroads.

Headlight beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the halogen headlamp beams should be adjusted in height according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** Empty.
- 1** Partial load.
- 2** Medium load.
- 3** Maximum authorised load.

i The initial setting is position 0.



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0** – 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 1** – 5 people.
- 2** – 6 to 9 people.
- 3** – Driver + maximum authorised loads.

i The initial setting is position 0.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

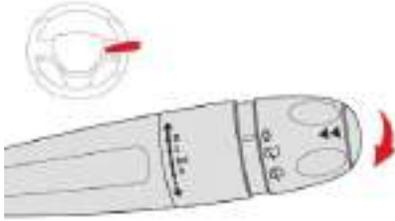
! In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

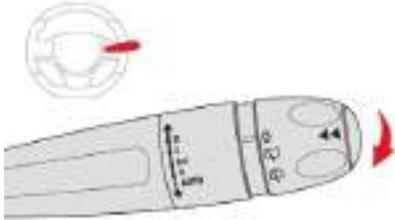
Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

Model with manual wiping (intermittent)



Model with AUTO wiping



Front windscreen wipers

Raise or lower the control to the desired position to change the wiping speed.

- 2** Fast wiping (heavy rain).
- 1** Normal wiping (moderate rain).
- Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
- 0** Stop.
- ↓** Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

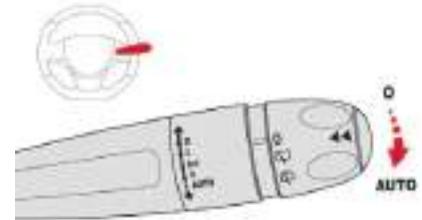
or

- AUTO ↓** Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
- AUTO ↓** Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rainfall is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on



Give a short downwards push to the control.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off



Give the control stalk a brief push downwards or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2). This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

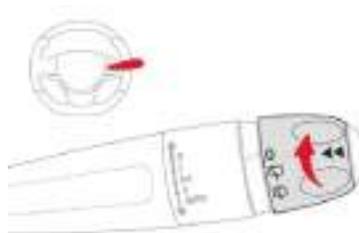
If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor combined with the sunshine sensor and located in the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Rear wiper



Off.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

i This system is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Rear wipe in reverse gear**".

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Rear wiper in reverse**".

4

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash, then the windscreen wipers, operate for a pre-determined time. The headlamp wash is only activated **if the dipped headlamps are on** and the vehicle is **moving**.

With daytime running lamps, to activate the headlamp wash, position the lighting stalk in the dipped beam position.

i On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the windscreen wash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

SERVICE

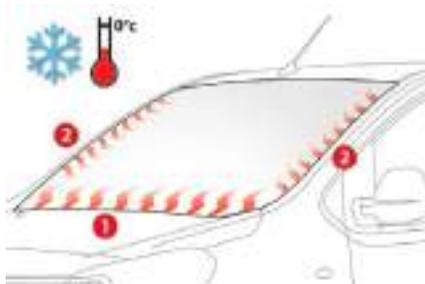


In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

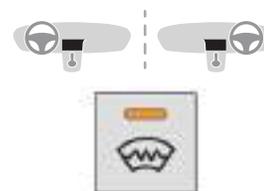
The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled. Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

Heated windscreen and washer jets

(depending on country of sale)
This function heats the windscreen and washer jets under cold conditions.



In area **1**, the heating frees the wiper blades when they are stuck by snow or ice. In area **2**, the heating improves visibility by avoiding the accumulation of snow when the wipers are operating.



Switching on

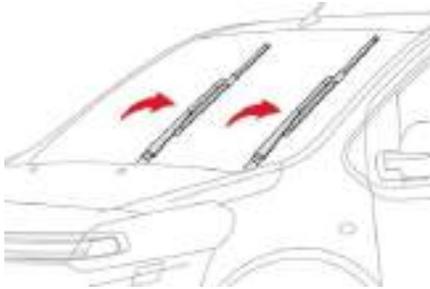


With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The period of operation depends on the ambient temperature. Pressing this button again switches the function off; its indicator lamp goes off.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk within one minute after switching off the ignition to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
 - clean them regularly using soapy water,
 - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are attached in different places of your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information of your vehicle. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

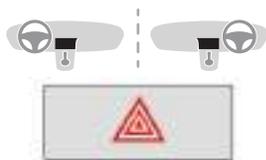
! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

Hazard warning lamps

Visual warning with all of the direction indicators flashing to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, recovery or accident.



- ☞ When you press this button, all of the direction indicators flash. It can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lights

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS function is invoked or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call



- * In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" service*.



Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call. The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle, contacts you in your own language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services. In countries where the service is not operational, the call is directed directly to the emergency services (112) without location.

- ** As per the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

5

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

Operation of the system

 When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

 The red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.

 The red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

The red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Localised Assistance Call

 Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

 Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available at dealers or on www.citroen.co.uk.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.



To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand network, we invite you to check the configuration of these services and, if desired, have a dealer change it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

Audible warning



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control (ESC: Electronic Stability Control) integrating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system (EBFD) manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

5

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system permits the optimum braking pressure to be reached more quickly, therefore reducing the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control

If your vehicle has this system, it features a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of difficult surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

i The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.



If this warning lamp comes on, in conjunction with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, an audible signal and a message, it means that the electronic brake force distribution (EBD) is defective.

STOP

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.



In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

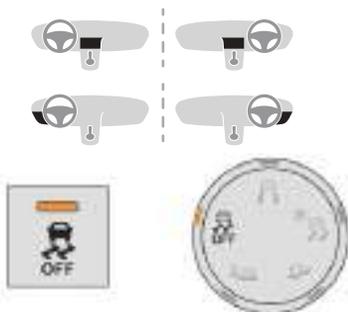
i When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

i Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

! If you need to brake in an emergency, press the brake pedal very firmly and keep the pressure applied.

! After an impact, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.



This is indicated by the warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

But it is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.



Press this button.

Or



Turn the thumbwheel to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel comes on: the DSC/ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

However, below 30 mph (50 km/h) you can manually reactivate the systems.



Press this button.

Or



Turn the thumbwheel to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or for the thumbwheel goes off.

Operating fault



Illumination of the warning light accompanied by a message in the screen indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5

! ASR / DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

Grip control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on to confirm your choice.

i Associated with all-seasons Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and traction. They are efficient in winter and summer conditions.

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.



☞ Place the knob in this position.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 30 mph (50 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(This mode is active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



☞ Place the knob in this position.

i Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

5



You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.



Driving recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones, in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Seat belts

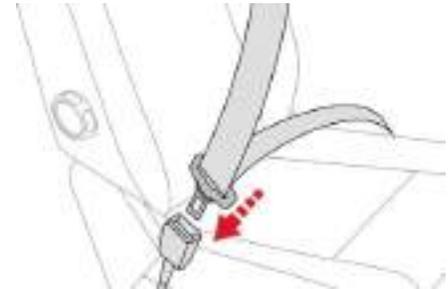
Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the passengers. The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the passenger, so improving their protection.

Locking

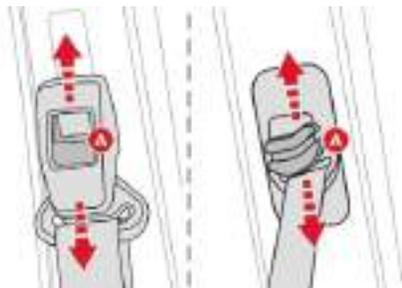


- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unlocking

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

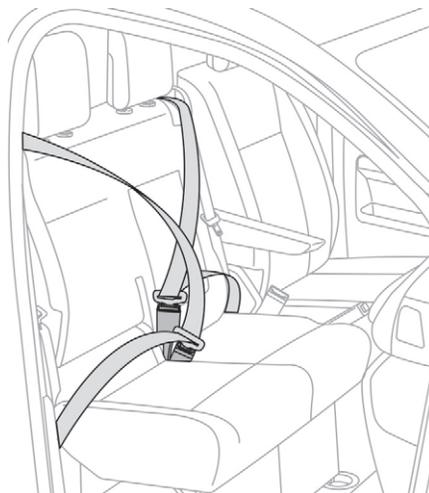
Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, while moving control **A** downwards, slide the assembly down to the desired position.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the assembly up to the desired position.

i The upper part of the diagonal strap should lie across the shoulder.

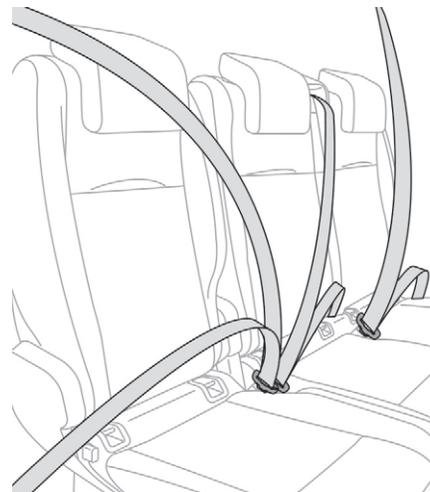
2-seat front bench seat



If your vehicle is fitted with a front bench seat, ensure that each belt is used with its correct buckle.

Do not interchange the driver's seat belt or buckle with the centre seat belt or buckle.

Rear seat belts



If your vehicle is fitted with a 3-seat bench seat (one piece or 1/3 – 2/3 split), these are fitted with three-point seat belts and inertia reels on the outer seats.

The centre seat has a seat belt guide and inertia reel, solid with the seat back.

5

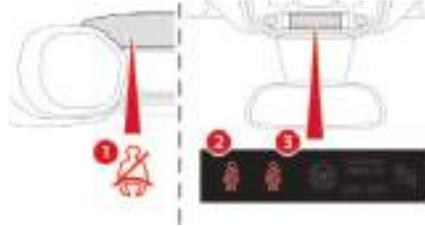
The seat belt reels for the outer seats in row 2 have force limiters.

The seats in row 3 have three-point seat belts with inertia reels.

- For rows 2 and 3, fit each seat belt to its correct buckle. Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat. When folding the outer seats or placing a backrest in the table position, avoid trapping the belt for the centre seat. After folding a rear seat or bench seat, ensure that the seat belt has reeled in correctly and the buckle is ready to receive the belt tongue. When handling the outer seats (removing or refitting) or for access to row 3, avoid trapping the centre belt.

Seat belt warning lamps

With individual front seats



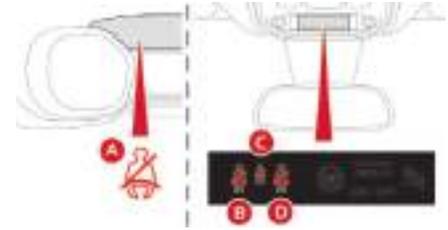
1. Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Left seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
3. Right seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

On switching on the ignition, a warning lamp comes on if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.



From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flash for two minutes, associated with an audible signal. Beyond these two minutes, the warning lamps remain on if the driver or front passenger do not fasten their seat belt(s).

With 2-seat front bench seat (and the driver seat)



- A. Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
- B. Left seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
- C. Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel.
- D. Right seat belt unfastened warning lamp.

On switching on the ignition, a warning lamp comes on if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

i Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not completely fulfil their role.

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to your shape. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The rollers have an automatic blocking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or a rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

i Instructions for children

Use a suitable child seat, if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

i In case of impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic may be deployed before and independent of the airbags. Deployment of the pyrotechnics is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp is lit. After an impact, get the seat belt system checked and, if necessary, have it replaced by the network CITROËN or by qualified workshop.

Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of passengers (with the exception of the centre seat in rows 2 and 3, depending on your vehicle) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the effect of seat belts with a force limiter.

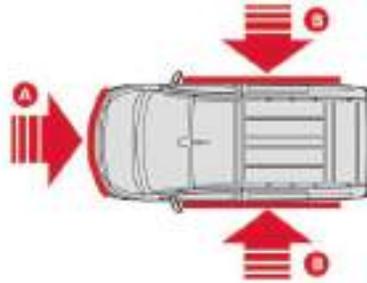
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the passengers (with the exception of the centre seat in rows 2 and 3, as applicable); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the passengers,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

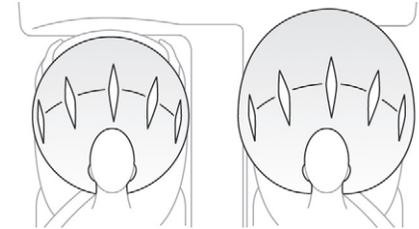
Impact detection zones



- A. Frontal impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

i Airbag deployment generates slight smoke emissions and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The noise of detonation associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in slight and temporary loss of hearing.

Front airbags



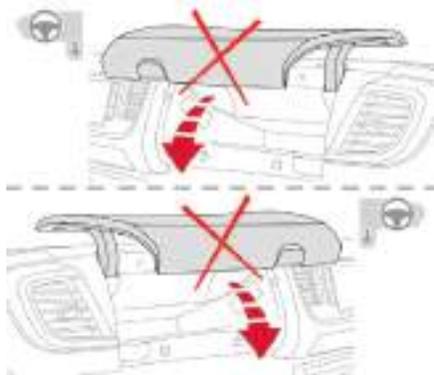
System which protects the driver and passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger side to cushion their forward movement.



! **When driving**, keep the glove box closed. Otherwise, this could cause injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

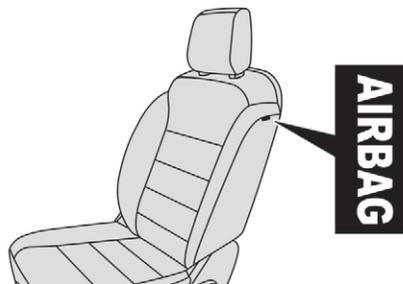
Operating fault



If this warning light on the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags



If fitted to your vehicle, this system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.

Each side airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front passenger's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags (row 2 and 3)



If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that contributes towards greater protection for the passengers (with the exception of the centre seats) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

5

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close or in the way of airbag trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even when following all the precautions listed, a risk of injuries or slight burns to the head, the chest or the arms, when an air bag deploys cannot be excluded. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries in case of airbag deployment.

Curtain airbags

Do not attach anything or hang anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Side airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not attach or hang anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the side airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the front than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – Risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN's main considerations when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in an approved child seat suited to their weight** and installed on a vehicle seat fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings**.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward-facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

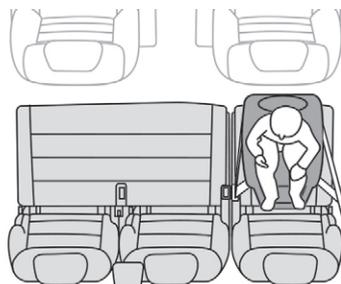
- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2



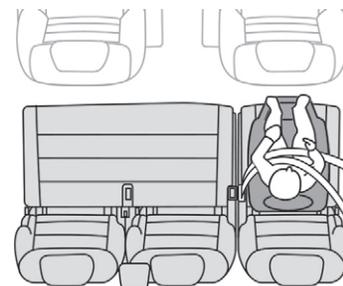
"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat. Adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened.

* The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country.

"Forward facing"



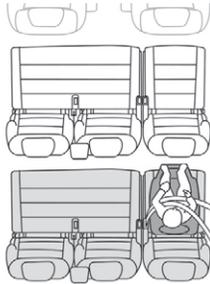
When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened.

i Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened. For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

5

Row 3



If fitted to your vehicle, when a child seat is installed on a passenger seat in the 3rd row, move the seats in the 2nd row forward and straighten the backrests so that the child seat and the child's legs do not touch the seats in the 2nd row.

Child seat at the front

(Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.)

"Rearward facing"



When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.

! The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**

"Forward facing"



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the fully back and highest position with the seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

i Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted to the highest position and in the maximum longitudinal rear position.

Deactivating the passenger front airbag

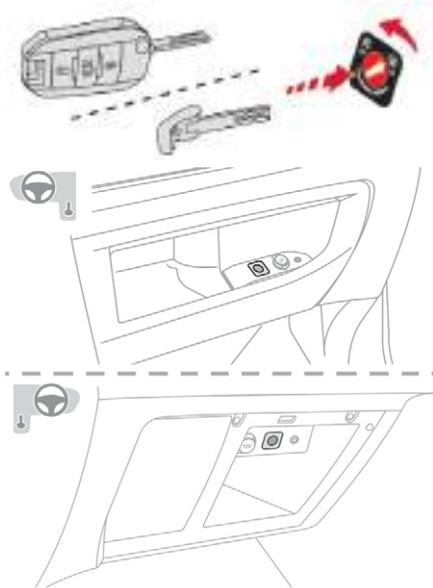
! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, this warning is available in all of the languages required.

5

Deactivation



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the OFF position.
- ☞ Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the ON position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger(s) in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام الأمان للطلق الوجه باتجاه الراء على مائد سيارة تجهز بوسادة امان حوائية انسية معلقة. فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت اللؤل أو بإصابات خطيرة ليه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumistujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkå ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edesså suojana on käyttööen aktivoitu TURVATYYNYY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD Neuzstādiēt uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahrh lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalix tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNAJĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopolnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installerad på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yûzû arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: 15-36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Groups 2 and 3: 15-36 kg



L6

"BOOSTER GRACO"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

5

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

Pursuant to European legislation, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved (a) for the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.



Seats			Weight of the child and indicative age			
			Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year	9-18 kg (group 1) From 1 to about 3 years	15-25 kg (group 2) From 3 to about 6 years	22-36 kg (group 3) From 6 to about 10 years
Cab/Row 1 (c) (f)		With individual seat, passenger seat	U	U	U	U
		With bench seat, outer seat	U	U	U	U
		With bench seat, centre seat	X	X	X	X
Row 2 (d) (Fixed bench seat)*		Left outer seat	U	U	U	U
		Centre seat	U	U	U	U
		Right outer seat	U	U	U	U

* The folding bench seat is in the process of being approved.



Seats				Weight of the child and indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	9-18 kg (group 1) From 1 to about 3 years old	15-25 kg (group 2) From 3 to about 6 years old	22-36 kg (group 3) From 6 to about 10 years old
Row 1 (c)		With individual seat, passenger seat	with passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			with passenger airbag activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
		With bench seat, centre seat	with passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	X	X	X	X
			with passenger airbag activated "ON"	X	X	X	X
		With bench seat, outer seat	with passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			with passenger airbag activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2		Left outer seat	U	U	U	U	
		Centre seat	U	U	U	U	
		Right outer seat	U	U	U	U	
Row 3		Left outer seat	U	U	U	U	
		Centre seat	U	U	U	U	
		Right outer seat	U	U	U	U	

5

Key

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
 - (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.
 - (c) Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.
 - (d) To install a child seat at the rear, forward facing or rearward facing, move the seats in front forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.
 - (e) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.
 - (f) When a "rearward facing" child seat is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be off. Otherwise, the child could face severe injury or death if the airbag is deployed.
- U** Seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

- UF** Seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "forward facing".
- X** Seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

ISOFIX mountings



Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX regulation. If fitted on your vehicle, the regulation ISOFIX mountings are located by labels. The mountings comprise three rings for each seat:

- Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" marking,
- If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B**, located behind the vehicle's seat, called Top Tether, for securing the top tether, indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.

The Top Tether secures the top tether of child seats that have them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the tilting of the child seat forward.

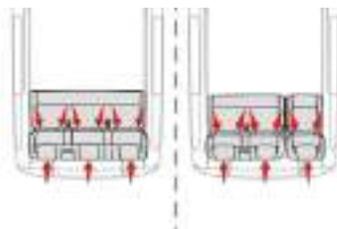
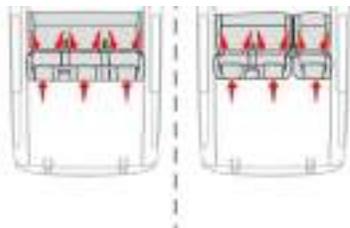
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two front rings **A**.

Some also have a top tether which is attached to rear ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- run the strap of the child seat behind the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook on the end of the top tether to rear ring **B**,
- tighten the top tether.



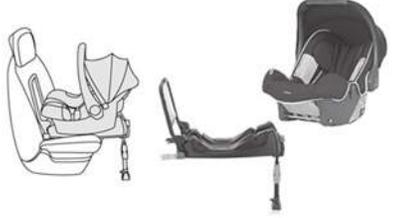
! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the locations table.

5

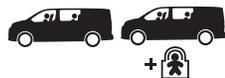
ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle. Also consult the installation notes of the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base (size category: E)	"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: B1)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
	
<p>Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings A. The base has a height-adjustable support leg which rests on the vehicle's floor.</p> <p>This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.</p>	<p>Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Is attached to rings A and upper ring B, referred to as TOP TETHER, using a top tether.</p> <p>Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.</p> <p>This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.</p>

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

Pursuant to European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

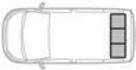
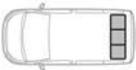


			Weight of the child / indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Cot		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Row 1		2-seat bench seat	Not ISOFIX									
		Individual seat	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2 with 2-seat bench seat in row 1		Left outer seat	X					IUF				
		Centre seat	Not ISOFIX									
		Right outer seat	X					IUF				
Row 2 with individual seats in row 1		Left outer seat	IL	IL (4)	IL	IL (4)	IL	IUF				
		Centre seat	Not ISOFIX									
		Right outer seat	IL	IL (4)	IL	IL (4)	IL	IUF				

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>



		Type of ISOFIX child seat		Weight of the child/indicative age									
				Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years				
ISOFIX size category		Cot (1)		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing				
				F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Row 1 (a)		Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat	with passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
			with passenger airbag activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2		Left outer seat	X	IL (3)	IL (2)	IL	IL (2)	IUF, IL					
		Centre seat (b)	X	IL (3)	IL (2)	IL	IL (2)	IUF, IL					
		Right outer seat	X	IL (3)	IL (2)	IL	IL (2)	IUF, IL					

				Weight of the child/indicative age									
				Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat				Cot (1)		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category				F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Row 3		Fixed rear seat and bench seat	Left outer seat	X		X			X		IUF, IL		
			Centre seat (b)	X		X			X		IUF, IL		
			Right outer seat	X		X			X		IUF, IL		
		Fixed one-piece bench seat	Left outer seat	X		X			X		X		
			Centre seat (b)	X		X			X		X		
			Right outer seat	X		X			X		X		

5

Key

- (a) Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.
- (b) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

IUF Seat suitable for installing an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the top tether.

IL Seat suitable for an Isofix Semi-Universal child seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with a top tether or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a cot fitted with a top tether or a support leg.

X Seat unsuitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat or cot of the weight group indicated.

- (1) The installation of a cot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.
- (2) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat.

- (3) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat with individual passenger seat.
- (4) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front (with the front seat adjusted to 2 notches ahead of the centre of the slide).

i For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings** and in particular the top tether, refer to the associated section.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Advice

! Child seats

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum**, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimal installation of the forward-facing child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, or if possible in contact with it.

You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Children in front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. CITROËN recommends using a booster seat with a backrest equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle under the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within the reach of children inside the vehicle.

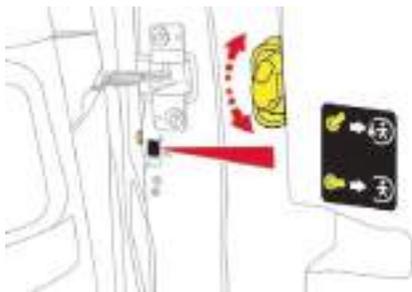
To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



Locking



Turn the control on the edge of the side door upwards.

Unlocking



Turn the control on the edge of the side door downwards.

Electric child lock



Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged rear doors or tailgate) using their interior controls.



Remote control system to prevent opening of the electric sliding side door(s) using their interior controls.

Activation



With the ignition on, press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. This indicator lamp remains on all the time that the child lock is activated. It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.

Deactivation



With the ignition on, press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm deactivation.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

i In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated (child lock off) automatically.

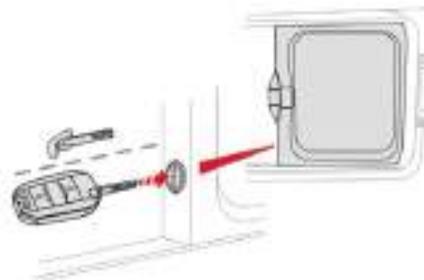
! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child locks. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Do not drive with the sliding side door open. Check the status of the child locks each time you switch on the ignition. Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Child lock on rear windows



This mechanical system prevents opening of the left and/or right rear side windows.



- ☞ Lock/unlock the system using the remote control or the back-up key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. Under no circumstances exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),

- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.): Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

To assure the durability of your vehicle and your safety, remember that certain precautions, described hereafter, should be taken when driving your vehicle:

Manoeuvre cautiously, at low speed

The dimensions of your vehicle differ from those of a light vehicle, in width, in height, as well as in length, and some obstacles will be more difficult to notice.

Manoeuvre slowly.

Before turning, check that there are no obstacles at mid-height along the sides.

Before reversing, check that there are no obstacles, particularly at high level behind the vehicle.

Be aware of the external dimensions, if ladders are fitted.

Load the vehicle correctly

With a load carried, the vehicle must remain within the maximum authorised weight, the Gross Vehicle Weight.

To avoid upsetting the balance of the vehicle, the load should be centred and the heaviest part placed on the floor in front of the rear wheels.

It is inadvisable to place heavy loads on a roof rack.

Loading also implies adherence to the maximum load of the roof bar anchor points. Adhere to the maximum permissible weight, according to CITROËN dealer specifications. Loads must be securely lashed down.

A load that is not properly secured inside the vehicle may affect vehicle handling and create a risk of accident.

If your vehicle is fitted with a drop-side back, the height and width of the load must remain within the overall dimensions of the vehicle.

Drive the vehicle in a prudent and efficient way

Take corners gently.

Anticipate the need to brake as the stopping distance is increased, particularly on wet or icy roads.

Be aware of the effect of side winds on the vehicle.

Effective eco-driving saves fuel; accelerate progressively, anticipate the need to slow down and adapt your speed to suit the situation.

Indicate changes of direction well in advance so that you are seen by other road users.

Take care

The tyres must be inflated to at least the pressures indicated on the label, even over-inflated by 0.2 to 0.3 bar for long journeys.

After ensuring that no obstacle might prevent closing, guide the movement of the door at the right speed until it closes.

In case of towing

! Driving with a tow places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Please respect the maximum towable weights.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.



! New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 600 miles (1,000 kilometres).

! When the ambient temperature is high, leaving the engine running for 1 to 2 minutes after stopping the vehicle to allow it to cool is recommended.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

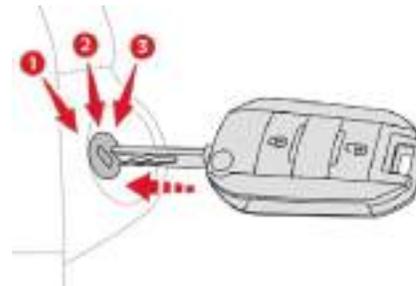
☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

! For more information on **Adjusting the headlamp beam height**, refer to the corresponding section.

! The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Starting-switching off the engine, manual key, remote control

Ignition switch

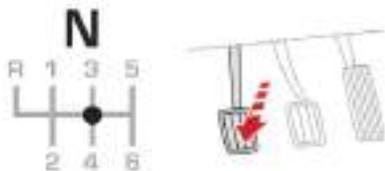


1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

Starting with the key

The parking brake must be applied.





☞ With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.



☞ With an electronic gearbox, select position **N** then firmly press the brake pedal.



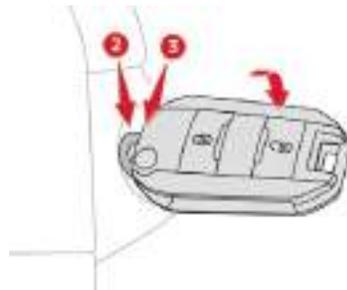
☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P**, then firmly press the brake pedal.



☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the start code.
 ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

i In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the road wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).

☞ Turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



☞ Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument cluster then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ! The indicator lamp does not come on if the engine is hot. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:
 - In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
 - In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
 - In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Risk of intoxication and death.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before restarting the engine. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

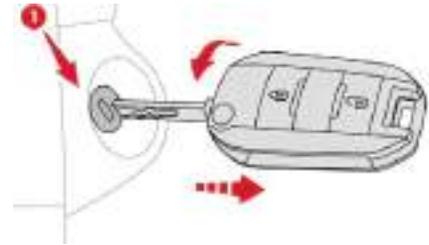
! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter. The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Switching off using the key

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.



- ☞ Turn the key towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

! To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, the front wheels should be straight before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop.

i When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors. As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without your remote control with you, even for a short period.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

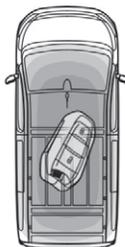
i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the "Ignition on" position

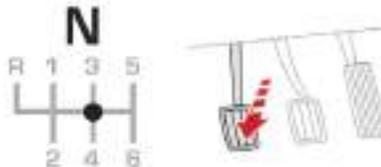
i When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**. If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting – switching off the engine, Keyless Entry and Starting

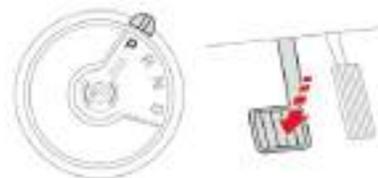
Starting



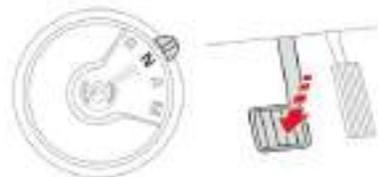
☞ Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.



☞ With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.



☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P**, then firmly press the brake pedal.



☞ With an electronic gearbox, select position **N** then firmly press the brake pedal.



☞ Then, press the **"START/STOP"** button.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

- ! The indicator lamp does not come on if the engine is hot. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:
 - In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
 - In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
 - In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Risk of intoxication and death.

- !  For **diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off. If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

- ! The presence in the recognition zone of the remote control of the Keyless Entry and Starting system is essential. Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person. If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed. Move the remote control into the zone to be able to start the engine.

- ! If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message appears on the instrument panel. In some cases, it is necessary to operate the steering wheel while pressing the "START/STOP" button to help unlock the steering column, a message appears.

Switching off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the **"START/STOP"** button.

The engine stops and the steering column is locked.

- ! If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter. The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.



With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

This also allows some equipment to be activated (examples: audio system, lighting, etc.).



☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

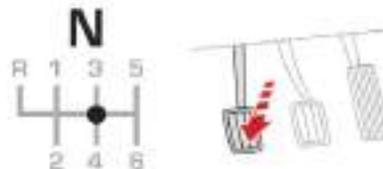


☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

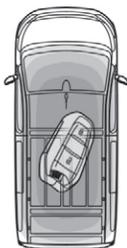


☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader, then:



☞ With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)



Emergency starting

Should your vehicle not detect the electronic key in the recognition zone, because the remote control battery is flat, a back-up reader is provided to the left, behind the steering wheel to allow starting.



☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P**, then firmly press the brake pedal.



☞ With an electronic gearbox, select position **N** then firmly press the brake pedal.



☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.

The engine starts.

Forced switch-off

In the event of an emergency only and with the vehicle stationary, you can switch off the engine.



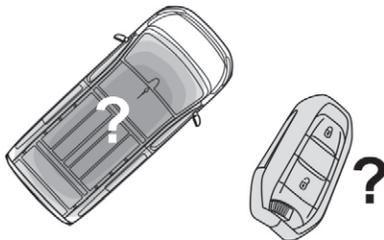
☞ To do this, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.



☞ If you want to force switching off the engine, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Remote control not recognised



If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone when you close a door or when you (later) request switching off the engine, a message appears in the instrument panel.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off, and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen. If this happens, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer if required.

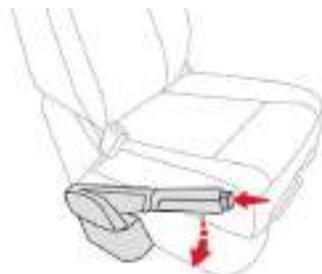
! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

Parking brake

Locking

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground



☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, or on a steep slope with a laden vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

! With a manual gearbox, engage a gear then switch off the ignition.

! With an automatic gearbox, put the gear selector into **P** then switch off the ignition.

! With an electronic gearbox, place the gear selector to position **A** then switch off the ignition.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

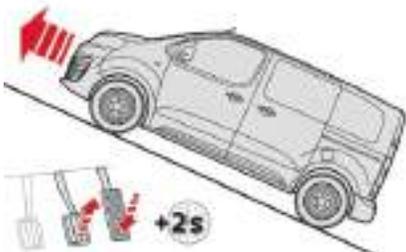
It is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- with the driver's door closed.

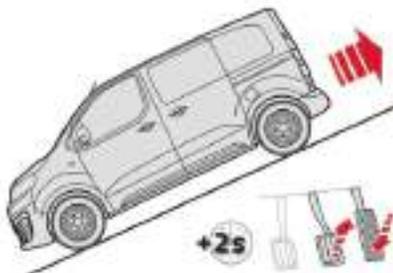
The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily in the hill start assist phase.

If you need to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp is on.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, it will briefly stop the vehicle from rolling back when you release the brake pedal.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox and you have to move off on a steep slope (rising or falling) with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

- ☞ With a manual gearbox: move the gear lever to the first gear position or neutral.
- ☞ With an automatic gearbox, place the selector at position **D** or select manual operation **M**.
- ☞ Vehicle with an electronic gearbox: move the selector to position **A** or **M**.

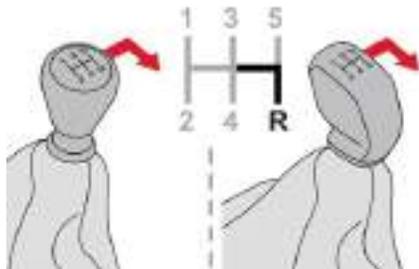
Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on associated with a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked as soon as possible.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



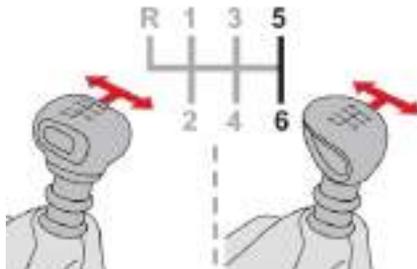
- ☞ With the clutch pedal fully down, place the gear lever in neutral.
- ☞ Move the gear lever to the right then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

- i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
 - press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

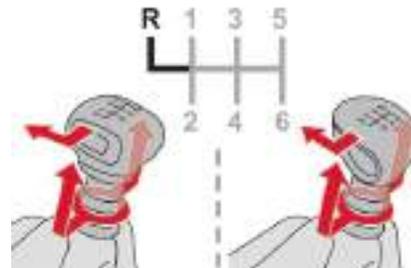
Engaging 5th or 6th gear



- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

- i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
 - press the clutch pedal.

Gear shift indicator

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear. Depending on the driving situation and the equipment of your vehicle, the system can recommend you to skip one or several gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

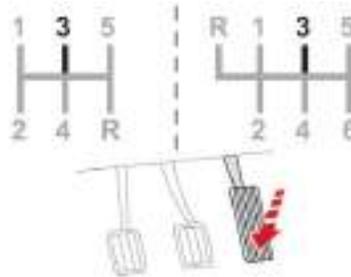


On certain BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral (N is displayed in the instrument panel) so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions.

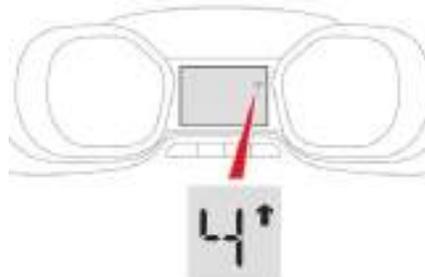
! Gear engagement recommendations are only optional. In fact, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear.

The gear efficiency indicator system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Example:



- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow. With a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

i This function cannot be deactivated.

Automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.

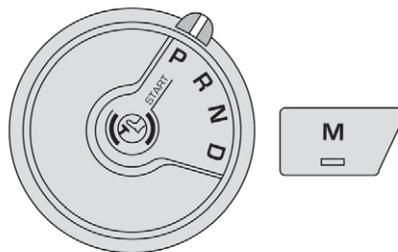
There are two driving modes:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

When operating automatically, it remains possible to change gear manually using the steering mounted control paddles, when overtaking, for example.

Gear selector

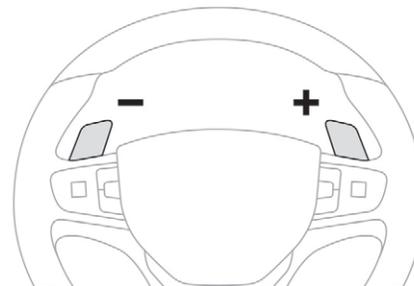
! To safely switch the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake.



- P.** Parking.
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, turn the selector to this position for parking or starting.
- R.** Reverse.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position.
- N.** Neutral.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position for starting.
- D.** Automatic operation.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position.
- M.** Manual operation with sequential gear changing.
 - ☞ Selector in position **D**, press this button then use the steering mounted controls to change gear.

i Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a washing tunnel.

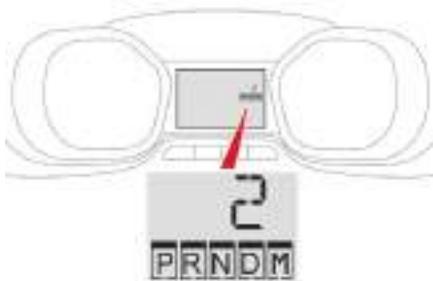
Steering mounted controls



- ☞ Pull the right-hand "+" control paddle towards you to change up.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand "-" control paddle towards you to change down.

i The steering controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Display on the instrument panel



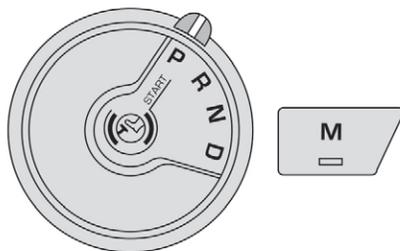
When you move the gear selector or press the **M** button, the corresponding symbol appears in the instrument panel.

- P.** Parking
- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- D.** Drive (automatic operation)
- M.** Manual
- 1 to 6.** Gear engaged
- Invalid value



If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Starting the vehicle



With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.

Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.

- Release the parking brake.
- Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

If you have to move off on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal.

Progressively release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started. If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

If position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected when the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being depressed. Never leave children in the vehicle unsupervised. As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

D Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.



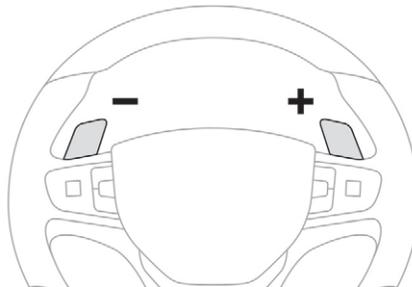
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, depress the accelerator fully (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

For better safety, the gearbox will not shift up if you release the accelerator sharply.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes



You can temporarily take over control of gear changes using the "+" and "-" steering mounted controls. If the engine speed allows, the gear change is carried out.

This function allows you to anticipate certain

situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road. After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

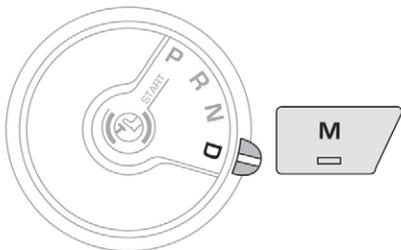
Self-sufficient traction (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).

With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without depressing the accelerator).

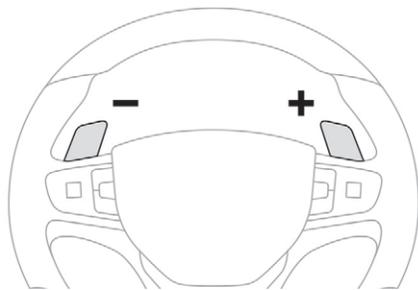
! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation



 With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on.



☞ Operate the "+" or "-" steering mounted controls.



M appears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.



☞ It is possible to return to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.

The indicator light for the button goes off.

i In manual mode it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

i If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the actual activated gear is displayed. When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

i To save the brakes when descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (take your foot off the accelerator pedal or change down). Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative. Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

i Depending on the road configuration (example: mountain road), manual operation is preferable. This is because automatic operation may not be best suited, not allowing the use of engine braking.

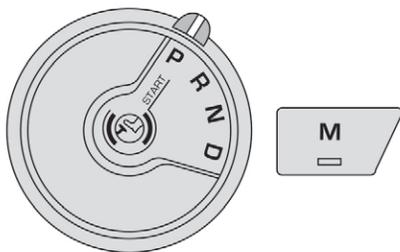
Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

☞ Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Stopping the vehicle



Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

- i** A stiff point may be noticed when moving to position **P**.
If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
 - ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

! On a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

! In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Malfunction

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time (braking or acceleration must be done only with the right foot),
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.



To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Electronic gearbox

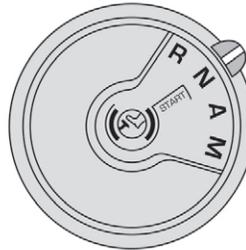
Electronically controlled gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation and manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are available:

- **automatic** operation for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action on the part of the driver,
- **manual** operation for sequential gear changing by the driver using the steering mounted paddles.

With automatic operation, you can temporarily take over control of gear changing at any time.

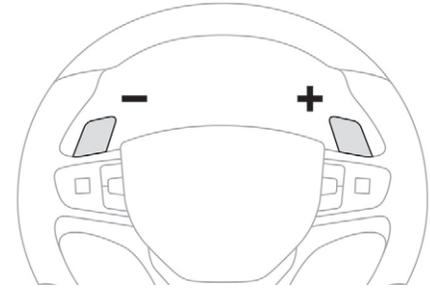
Gear selector



- R.** Reverse.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position.
- N.** Neutral.
 - ☞ With your foot on the brake, turn the selector to this position for starting.
- A.** Automatic operation.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position.
- M.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the gears.
 - ☞ Turn the selector to this position, then use the steering mounted control paddles to change gear.

! To safely switch the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake.

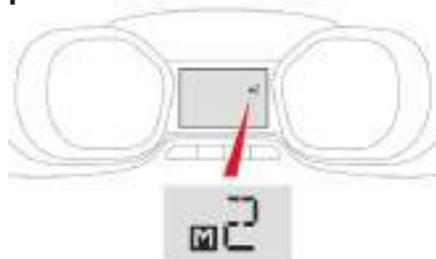
Steering mounted controls



- ☞ Pull the right-hand "+" control paddle towards you to change up.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand "-" control paddle towards you to change down.

i The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to select or come out of reverse gear.

Display on the instrument panel



When you move the selector, the warning lamp corresponding to its position is displayed on the instrument panel.

- R.** Reverse
- N.** Neutral
- AUTO** Automatic operation or **A.**
- M.** Manual
- 1 to 6.** Gear engaged
- Invalid value

Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Select position **N**.
- ☞ Depress the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Start the engine.



N appears in the instrument panel screen.

i If the engine does not start:

If **N** flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, move the selector to position **A** then to position **N**.



If the **Foot on brake** warning lamp comes on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message "Foot on brake", depress the brake pedal firmly.

- ☞ Select automatic operation (position **A**), manual operation (position **M**), or reverse (position **R**).
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal; the vehicle then moves off.

Automatic operation

- ☞ After starting the engine, select position **A** for automatic gear changes



AUTO and the gear engaged are displayed in the instrument panel.

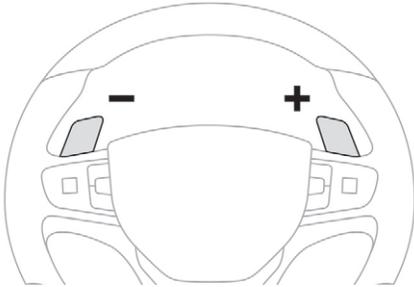
The gearbox then operates in auto-active mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the following parameters:

- the style of driving,
- profile of the road.



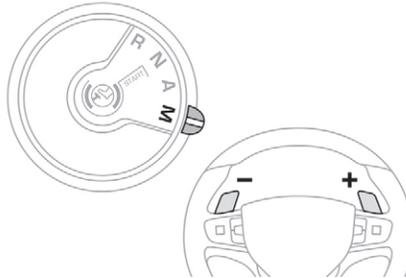
For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, depress the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

Temporary manual control of gear changes



You can **temporarily** take over control of gear changes using the "+" and "-" steering mounted controls. If the engine speed allows, the gear change is carried out. This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road. After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

Manual operation



- ☞ After starting the engine, select position **M** for **sequential** gear changes
- ☞ Operate the "+" or "-" steering mounted controls.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged are displayed successively in the instrument panel.

i It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear. When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow the vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

! On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the steering mounted paddles. Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving. Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal depressed.

i Changing from one gear to another only occurs if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.

Reverse gear

To engage reverse gear, the vehicle must be stationary with your foot on the brake pedal.



☞ Select position **R**.

Engagement of reverse gear is accompanied by an audible signal.

i At low speed, if the reverse gear is requested, indicator lamp **N** flashes and the gearbox automatically shifts into neutral. To shift into reverse, foot on the brake pedal, shift the selector into **N**, then into **R**.

Stopping the vehicle



Before switching off the engine, you can:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral, or
- leave the vehicle in gear; in this case the vehicle cannot be moved.

In both cases, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must move the selector to neutral **N**. Before doing anything under the bonnet ensure that the selector is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Malfunction

With the ignition on, the flashing of **A** or **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! You must keep your foot on the brake pedal while starting the engine. In all parking situations, you must apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.



Going into engine STOP mode

i For your convenience during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

The Stop & Start does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering, etc. A slight delay between the vehicle stopping and the engine cutting out may be noticed.

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

With a **manual gearbox**, when vehicle speed is below 12 mph (20 km/h) or the vehicle is stationary (depending on engine), the Stop & Start warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal.

With an **automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, the Stop & Start warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on and the engine goes into standby automatically when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.

With an **electronic gearbox**, vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), the Stop & Start warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on and the engine goes into standby automatically when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.

Time counter Stop & Start

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)



or



If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start, a time counter adds up the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked in certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature) to assure correct operation of the system and mainly when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (uphill or downhill),
- the driver's door is open,
- a sliding side door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start by the driver,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.



Going into engine START mode

With a **manual gearbox**, the Stop & Start warning lamp goes off on the instrument panel and the engine restarts automatically when you press the clutch pedal **fully** down to the floor.

With an **automatic gearbox**, the Stop & Start warning lamp on the instrument panel goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.

With an **electronic gearbox**, the Stop & Start warning lamp on the instrument panel goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **A** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **A** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.

Special cases: START mode activated automatically

START mode is invoked automatically in certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting) to assure correct operation of the system and mainly when:

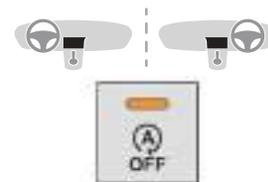
- you open the driver's door,
- you open a sliding side door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) or 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on the engine) with a manual gearbox,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Activation With / Without audio system



To deactivate the system:



- ☞ Press the button, its indicator lamp comes on, the system is deactivated.

To activate the system:



- ☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp goes off, the system is activated.

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Stop & Start system**".

! If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

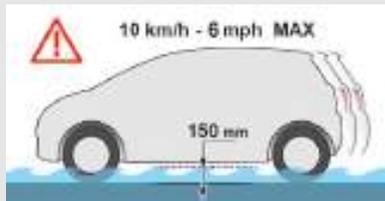
i The system reactivates automatically every time the engine is started by the driver.

! Opening the bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

! Driving on flooded roads



Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel.



The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

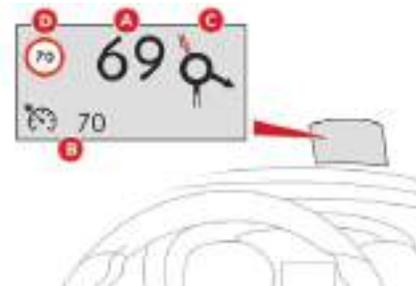
Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear lever in position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.

With the vehicle stationary, you must switch off the ignition and then start the engine again.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade in the driver's field of vision so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.

Displays during operation

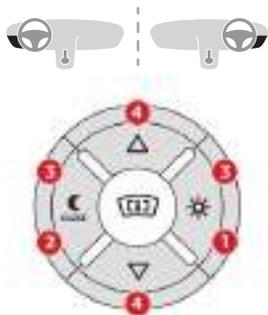


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

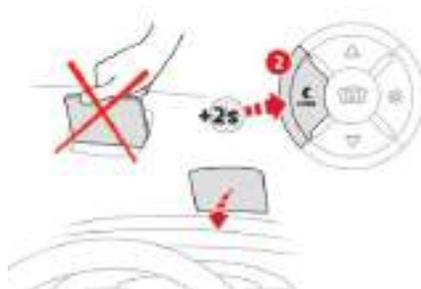
- A.** The speed of your vehicle.
- B.** Cruise control/speed limiter information.
- C.** If your vehicle is so equipped, inter-vehicle distance information, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
- D.** If your vehicle is so equipped, speed limit information.

i For more information on **Navigation**, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

Buttons



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.



Activation / Deactivation

e With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the blade.



e Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the blade.

The activated/deactivated state is saved and restored on restarting the engine.

Height adjustment

e With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using buttons **4**:

- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

e With the engine running, adjust the brightness of information display using button **3**:

- the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

! When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the blade (or in its recess) so as to not impede deployment of the blade and its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference. Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.

To clean the blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the blade or damage the anti-reflection coating.

i This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be stored that will then be offered for configuration of two systems: speed limiter or cruise control.

You can memorise up to six speed settings for each system.

Programming

The speed settings can be adjusted in the touch screen.

 In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, select "Adjust speed settings".

Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:



- speed limiter

or



- cruise control.



- Press the button corresponding to the speed setting you want to modify.
- Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.
- Confirm to store the changes and exit the menu.

i MEM Memorised speeds are recalled by pressing this button.

Recognition of speed limit and advice signs

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.

It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.

For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.

The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

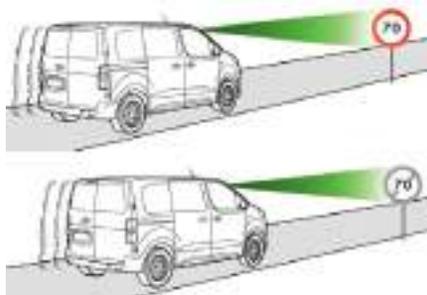
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic. It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

Principles



Depending on equipment, the system takes account of speed limit information from the navigation system mapping.

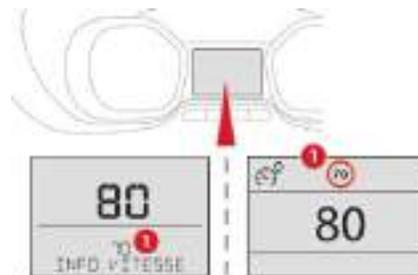


Depending on equipment, using a camera at the top of the windscreen, this system detects and reads speed limit and end of speed limit signs.

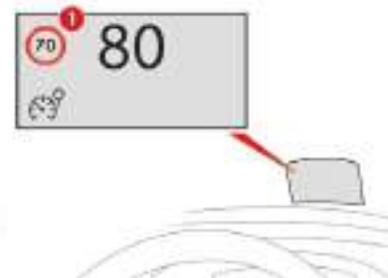
Depending on equipment, the system takes account of the camera and information from the navigation system mapping.

i For the speed limit information given by the navigation system to be correct, your mapping software must be regularly updated.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



1. Speed limit indication.

Speed display



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Speed recommendation**".

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Displaying of the recommended speed**".

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

i Clean the area of the windscreen in front of the camera regularly.

Memorising the speed setting

This function is additional to the display of **Speed limit recognition**.

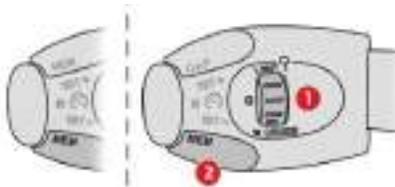


The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorisation button at the speed limiter controls, with the standard cruise control or the dynamic cruise control.

This speed setting overrides the speed limiter and/or cruise control's previous speed setting.

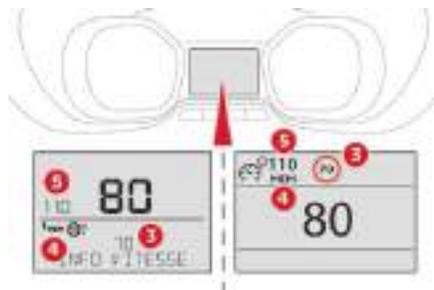
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Dynamic cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls

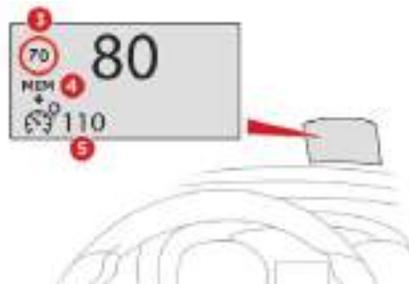


1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorisation



When the speed limiter/cruise control is switched on, the corresponding information is displayed.



On detection of a speed limit sign, the system displays the speed limit value and offers to make it the speed setting. "MEM" flashes in the screen for a few seconds.



MEM Make an **initial** press on this button to display the suggested limit speed.



MEM Press this button **again** to confirm the new speed setting.

Speed limiter ("LIMIT")



System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

Once the programmed speed limit is reached, additional pressure on the accelerator pedal has no effect.

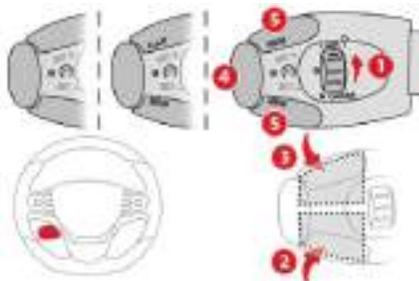
i The speed setting value is stored when the ignition is switched off.

i **GAP** For more information on this button and the **Dynamic cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **MEM** For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

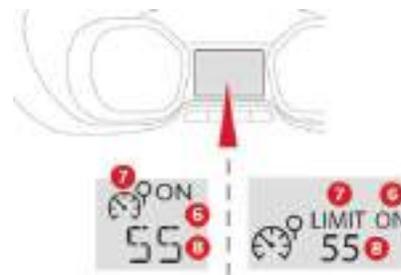
i For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorising them in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

Steering mounted controls

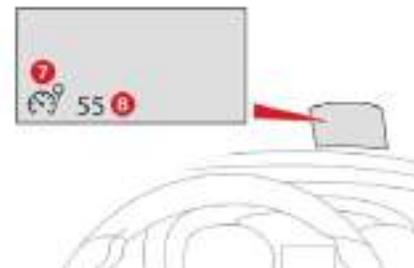


1. Selects speed limiter mode.
2. Lowers the programmed speed.
3. Raises the programmed speed.
4. Speed limiter on / pause.
5. If fitted to your vehicle, displays the list of memorised speeds or memorises the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Speed limiter on/pause indicator.
7. Speed limiter mode selected.
8. Value of the speed setting.

Switching on / Pause

Operation of the speed limiter requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **paused** using the control.



- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the LIMIT position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4**, if the speed displayed is suitable (by default, the last speed programmed).
- ☞ You can temporarily stop the speed limiter by pressing button **4** again: the display confirms that it has been stopped (Pause).

i The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly beyond the point of resistance.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the set speed limit has been reached again.

Adjusting the limit speed (setting)

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

Once the function is selected, you can modify the speed setting by:

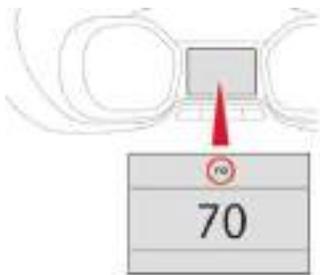
- using buttons **2** and **3**, increasing or decreasing the speed displayed:
 - ☞ by successive short presses, to modify the speed by + or – 1 mph (km/h),
 - ☞ by a maintained press, to change in steps of + or – 5 mph (km/h).



- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle has speed memorisation:
 - ☞ the six speeds memorised are displayed in the touch screen,
 - ☞ pressing the appropriate button for the speed setting you have chosen.

The value appears immediately on the instrument panel

The selection screen closes after a few moments.



- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle is equipped with speed limit recognition:
 - ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,
 - ☞ press button **5 again** to save the speed.The value appears immediately on the instrument panel.

i MEM For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ☞ Press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**, to exceed the programmed speed limit. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver (steep hill, etc.). As soon as the vehicle's speed returns to the programmed value, the limiter operates again: the display of the programmed speed becomes steady again.

Switching off



- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the 0 position. The display of information related to the speed limiter disappears.

Operating fault



Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the speed limiter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On sharp acceleration, as when descending a steep hill, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver.

Cruise control ("CRUISE")



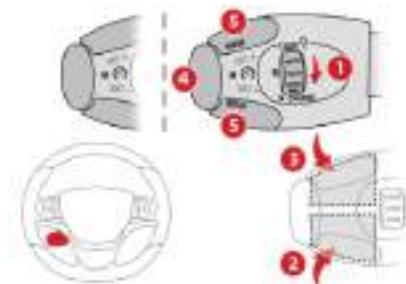
System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

i MEM For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

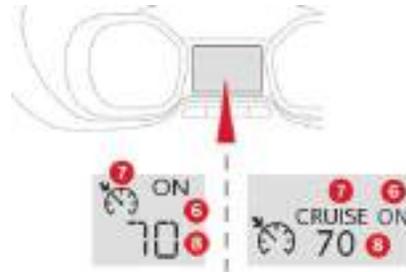
i MEM For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Steering mounted controls

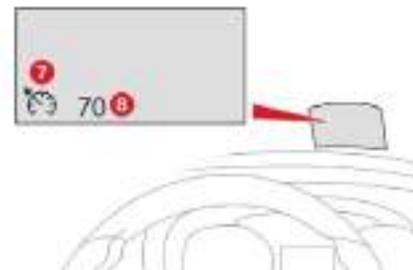


1. Selects cruise control mode.
2. Programme a speed / Decrease the value.
3. Programme a speed / Increase the value.
4. Pause-resume cruise control.
5. If fitted to your vehicle, display the list of memorised speeds or memorise the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.

6

Switching on

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, third or fourth gear or higher must be engaged.

With an automatic gearbox, second gear or higher must be engaged.



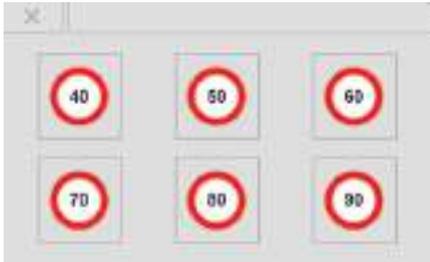
- ☞ Turn wheel 1 to the CRUISE position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Press button 2 or 3: your vehicle's current speed becomes the cruise speed. The cruise control is activated (ON).

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the programmed cruise speed is reached again.

Modification of the initial speed (setting)

If the cruise control is on, you can then modify the initial speed:

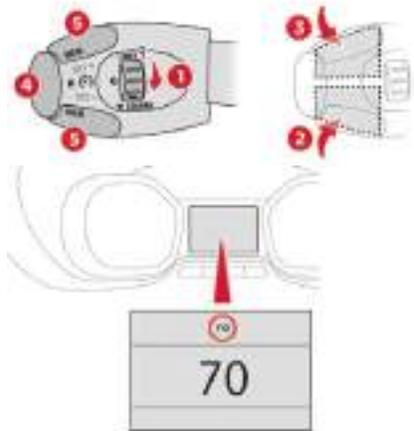
- using buttons 2 or 3:
 - ☞ by successive short presses, to modify the speed by + or - 1 mph (km/h),
 - ☞ by a long press, to modify the speed in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h),



- by pressing button 5, if your vehicle has speed memorisation:
 - ☞ the six speeds memorised are displayed in the touch screen,
 - ☞ choose a value: it is displayed in the instrument panel.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

The change then takes effect.



- by pressing button 5, if your vehicle is equipped with speed limit recognition:
 - ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,

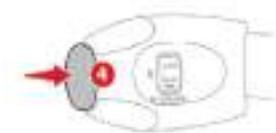
☞ press button **5** again to save the speed.

The value appears immediately on the instrument panel.

i For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Pause

The cruise control is paused manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or if the ESC system is invoked for safety reasons.

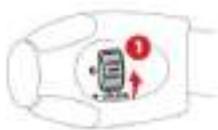


Once switched on, you can pause the cruise control at any time by pressing button **4**: the screen confirms the pause.

Exceeding programmed speed

If the programmed speed is exceeded, the displayed speed flashes. Once the vehicle returns to the programmed speed, the display becomes steady again.

Switching off



☞ Turn wheel **1** to the 0 position. The display of information related to the cruise control disappears.

Operating fault



Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the cruise control. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

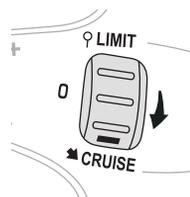
Adaptive cruise control ("CRUISE")



This system allows the vehicle's speed to be maintained at a value set by the driver.

In addition it allows (when circumstances permit) an inter-vehicle time that you have selected to be maintained between your vehicle and the one in front.

Activation/Deactivation



The cruise control selection thumbwheel must be at the "CRUISE" position, otherwise the selection is not taken into account. The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

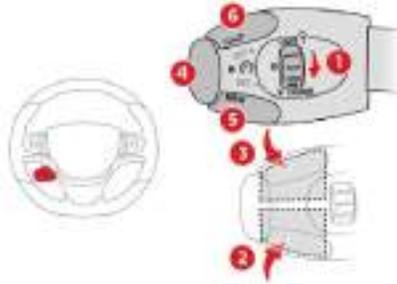
With the touch screen



In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, activate/deactivate "Active cruise control".

i The state of the system is memorised on switching off the ignition.

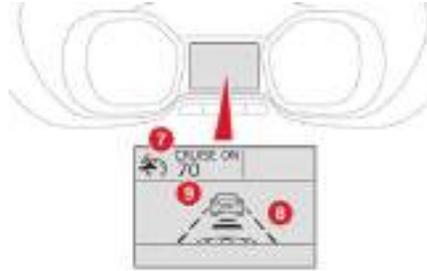
Steering mounted controls



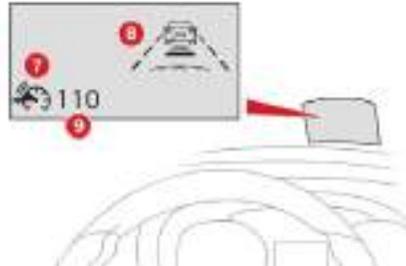
1. Selects cruise control mode.
2. Programme a speed / Decrease the value.
3. Programme a speed / Increase the value.
4. Pause / resume cruise control.
5. If fitted to your vehicle, display the list of memorised speeds or memorise the speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.
6. Select the inter-vehicle distance ("Close", "Normal", "Distant").

i By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "Normal". Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Display on the instrument panel



Head-up display



7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Indication of selection of cruise control mode, or vehicle speed adjustment phase.
9. Value of the speed setting.

i For more information on the **Head-up display**, refer to the corresponding section.

Switching on

The dynamic cruise control is **switched on** manually, it requires that the speed of the vehicle be between 25 mph and 90 mph (40 km/h and 150 km/h).

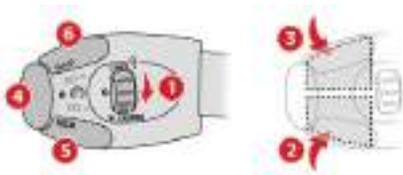
! If the cruise speed setting is above 90 mph (150 km/h), the dynamic cruise control switches to normal cruise control mode (without automatic regulation of the safe inter-vehicle distance).

With a manual gearbox, third or fourth gear or higher must be engaged.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, second gear or higher must be engaged.

i For more information on the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

The dynamic cruise control must be selected in the "Driving/Vehicle" menu.



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "CRUISE" position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control is activated (ON).

Changing the cruise speed yourself

If the cruise control is on, you can then change the initial speed:

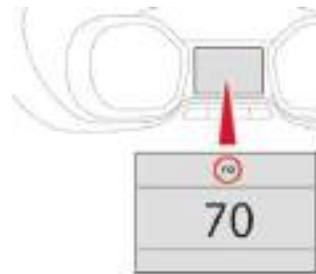
- using buttons **2** or **3**:
 - ☞ by successive short presses, to modify by steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h),
 - ☞ by a maintained press, to change in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).



- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle has speed memorisation:
 - ☞ the six speeds memorised are displayed in the touch screen,
 - ☞ choose a speed setting: it is displayed on the instrument panel.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

The change then takes effect.



- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle is equipped with speed limit recognition:
 - ☞ the speed to memorise is displayed in the instrument panel,
 - ☞ press button **5** again to save the speed.

The value appears immediately on the instrument panel.

i MEM For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorising them in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

i As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed setting close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Inter-vehicle distance



Using radar with a range of about 100 metres, located at the front of the vehicle, this system detects a vehicle travelling in front of your vehicle.

It automatically adjusts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front.

If the vehicle in front is running more slowly, the system progressively reduces the speed of your vehicle using just engine braking (as if the driver had pressed the "-" button).

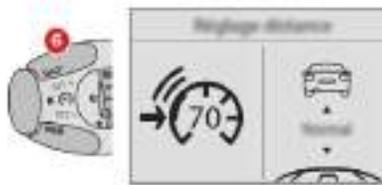
If your vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front or is approaching it too quickly, active cruise control is automatically deactivated.

The driver is then alerted by an audible signal accompanied by a message.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the active cruise control gradually accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the dynamic cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance



Press button **6** to select a new inter-vehicle distance setting from the 3 levels ("**C**lose", "**N**ormal", "**D**istant").

This value remains in memory, regardless of the state of the system.

In the event of the presence of a vehicle detected by the inter-vehicle distance radar, if the speed selected is too far above the speed of that vehicle, the system is not activated and the alert message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed until driving conditions are safe to allow activation of the system.

The inter-vehicle distance setting is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Exceeding programmed speed



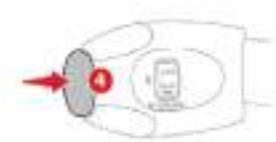
It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.



Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed setting is unintentionally exceeded, descending a steep hill for example, the speed setting in the instrument panel flashes as a warning.

Pause



The dynamic cruise control can be **paused** manually with the control, or automatically:

- by pressing the brake or clutch pedal,
- if the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons,
- when an inter-vehicle distance threshold is reached (calculated according to the relative speeds of your vehicle and the vehicle in front and the inter-vehicle distance setting selected),
- when the distance between your vehicle and the one in front becomes too small,
- when the speed of the vehicle in front is too low,
- when the speed of your vehicle becomes too low.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Symbol	Associated message	Comment
		No vehicle detected: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
		Detection of a vehicle, at the limit of the range of the radar: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
	"SPEED ADJUSTED"	Detection of a vehicle that is too close or running at a speed lower than your vehicle's cruise speed setting. The system uses engine braking to slow your vehicle (within a limit of 20 mph (30 km/h)) and then keeps it at the speed of the vehicle in front so as to observe the programmed inter-vehicle time. When automatically slowing down behind a vehicle, your true speed may be higher than the "adjusted speed" displayed.
	"SPEED ADJUSTED"	When the adjusted speed reaches the limit of regulation (speed setting – 20 mph (30 km/h)), the adjusted speed flashes together with the speed setting to signal that automatic deactivation of the system is imminent.
	"Cruise control paused".	If the system exceeds the limit of speed adjustment that it can make and in the absence of any reaction by the driver (operation of the direction indicator, change of lane, reduction in the speed of the vehicle), the system is automatically paused. The display of the deactivation message is accompanied by an audible signal.

! When the adaptive cruise control pauses automatically, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

When the conditions allow, it is recommended that the function be reactivated by pressing button **2** (SET+) or **3** (SET-), which will make the current speed of your vehicle the new cruise speed setting, rather than by pressing button **4** (on/pause) which reactivates the cruise control using the old cruise speed setting, which may be very different from the current speed of your vehicle.

Operating limits

The regulation range is limited to a **maximum difference of 20 mph (30 km/h) between the cruise speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front.**

Above this, the system goes into pause if the safe distance becomes too small.

The active cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.

The system is paused automatically:

- if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
- if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- if the system does not slow the vehicle enough to continue to maintain a safe distance, for example when descending a steep hill.

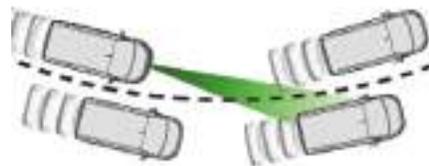
Since the radar detection range is relatively restricted, it is possible that the system cannot detect:



- vehicles of reduced width, such as motorcycles, for example,



- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane,



- vehicles entering a corner,
- vehicles changing lane at the last moment.

i The cruise control does not take account of:

- stationary vehicles,
- vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the dynamic cruise control system, you are warned by an audible signal and the display of the message "Driving aid functions fault".

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The dynamic cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

! The system does not act on the braking system, but works only with engine braking.

The regulation range is limited: there will no longer be any adjustment of speed if the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too high.

! If the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front is too great, the speed cannot be adjusted: the cruise control is automatically deactivated.

Collision Risk Alert and Active Safety Brake



The Collision Risk Alert system allows the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian in their traffic lane.

The Active Safety Brake system intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.



These systems use a radar located in the front bumper and a camera at the top of the windshield.

Conditions for operation

The **Collision Risk Alert** system only operates:

- with a registered vehicle pointing in the same direction as the traffic, moving or stationary,
- with pedestrians,
- above 5 mph (7 km/h) (and deactivates at 3 mph (5 km/h)).

The **Active Safety Brake** system only operates:

- between 3 and 85 mph (5 and 140 km/h), in the case of a moving vehicle,
- at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h), in the case of a stationary vehicle,
- at a speed below 35 mph (60 km/h), in the case of a pedestrian,
- if the passenger seat belts are fastened,
- if the vehicle is not accelerating sharply,
- if the vehicle is not in a tight corner.

The **Active Safety Brake** system does not operate:

- if the front bumper is damaged,
- if the system has been triggered in the last 10 seconds,
- if the electronic stability control system has a fault.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended:

- when towing a trailer or caravan,
- when a load on the roof rack extends beyond the windscreen (for example: long objects),
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (if your vehicle has one),
- when on a rolling stand for a service in a workshop,
- when in an automatic car wash,
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! Because of limits in the operation of the system, it is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay alert and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Collision Risk Alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel or the head-up display.

i This information also appears in the head-up display. For more information on the Head-up display, refer to the corresponding section.



Level 1 : visual alert only, warning you that the vehicle ahead is very close.



A message is displayed warning you to be vigilant when approaching the target vehicle.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.



A message indicating that you should brake is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

I Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly. Furthermore, the level 1 alert is never displayed with the "Close" threshold.

Programming the alert thresholds

The thresholds for triggering an alert determine how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary ahead of you, or a pedestrian in your traffic lane.

You can select one of three thresholds :

- "Distant", to be warned early (cautious driving).
- "Normal".
- "Close", to be warned later.

With audio system



In the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, activate/deactivate "Auto. emergency braking".

Then change the alert threshold.

With the touch screen



In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, activate/deactivate "Collision risk alert and automatic braking".

Then change the alert threshold.
Press "Confirm" to save the change.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Using a radar and a camera, this system acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the radar and the camera have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes when the system is operating.



Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

I The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted depending on the driving actions of the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or actions on the accelerator pedal.

i Operation of the system may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds. If automatic emergency braking is not activated, you are alerted by the fixed display of this warning lamp accompanied by a message. With an automatic gear box, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

i If automatic emergency braking is not activated, you are alerted by the fixed display of this warning lamp accompanied by a message.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

i If the driver does not brake sufficiently to avoid an accident, this system will complete the braking. This emergency braking system will not act if you press the brake pedal.

Deactivation / Activation of the alert and the braking

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start. The deactivation or activation of the function is done in the vehicle configuration menu.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Auto. emergency braking**".

With the touch screen



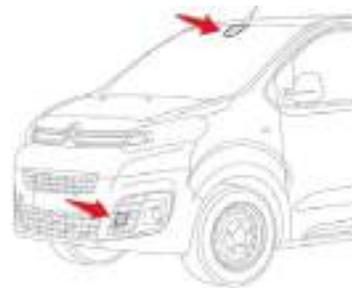
In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Collision risk alert and automatic braking**".

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

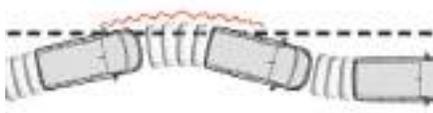
If the fault persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



i If one of the two sensors (camera or radar) is masked or its visibility is reduced, while the other sensor is able to work normally, the system still operates, but at a lower level of performance. No message or warning lamp indicates this. To ensure correct operation of the radar, do not paint over the paintwork on the vehicle's bumper.

i Poor weather conditions (very heavy rain, accumulation of snow in front of the radar and the camera) may hinder the operation of the system, with the display of an operating fault message. The function remains unavailable until the message disappears.

Lane departure warning system alert



System that uses a camera to recognise continuous or broken lines on traffic lanes and triggers an alert if the vehicle wanders off line. If the direction indicator is not used at speeds above 35 mph (60 km/h) and there is a risk of one of these lines on the ground being crossed, the system triggers the alert.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

Detection – Alert



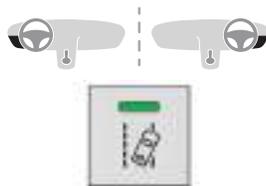
You are alerted by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

i No warning is transmitted while the flashing indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the flashing indicator is switched off.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

With // Without audio system



To activate the system:



☞ Press on this button, its indicator lamp comes on, the system is activated.

To deactivate the system:



☞ Press on this button, its indicator lamp goes off, the system is deactivated.

With the touch screen



In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, activate/deactivate "Lane departure warning".

Operating fault

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:



The indicator lamp in this button flashes.

or



The button flashes and a fault appears. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** Detection may be impeded:
- if the markings on the ground are worn and do not contrast well with the road surface,
 - if the windscreen is dirty,
 - in certain extreme weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

Fatigue detection system

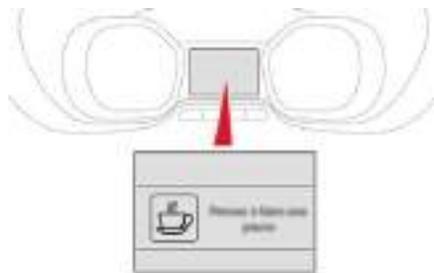
It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

Driving time warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal. If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Fatigue Detection System**".

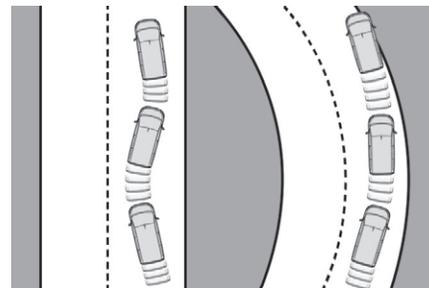
With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Fatigue Detection System**".

Fatigue detection system

Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Fatigue detection system".

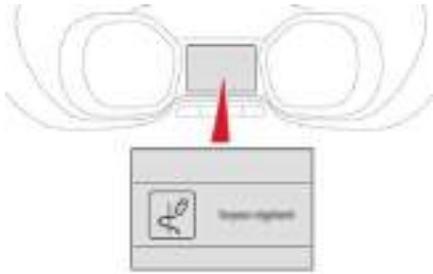


Driving



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h))



When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

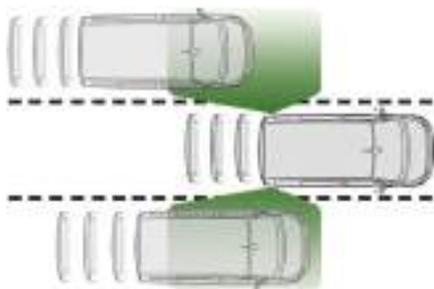
! In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Do not drive if you are tired or taking medicines that can cause drowsiness.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, masked (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Blind spot monitoring system



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of his vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

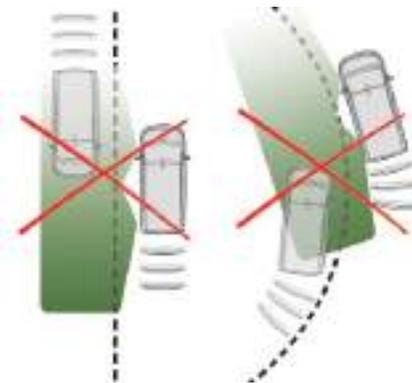
A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

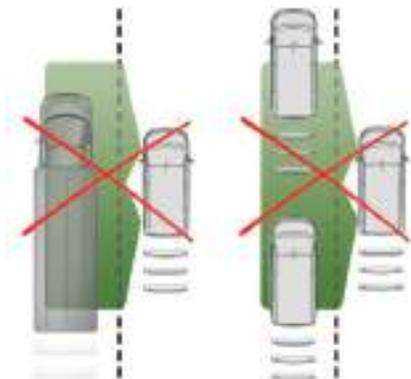
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction and on adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 85 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken returns to the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- oncoming traffic,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,

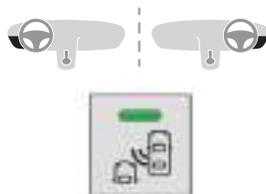


- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is also in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

With / Without audio system



To activate the system:



- ☞ Press on this button, its indicator lamp comes on, the system is activated.

To deactivate the system:



- ☞ Press on this button, its indicator lamp goes off, the system is deactivated.

With the touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate/deactivate "**Blind spot monitoring**".

i The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

Operating fault

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:



In the event of a fault, these warning lamps flash.

or



The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

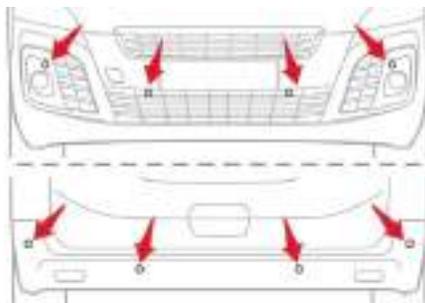
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

! High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, do not place the tip of the lance within 30 cm of the sensors as otherwise there is a risk of damaging them.

Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of any obstacle (examples: pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper. Certain types of obstacle (examples: stake, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

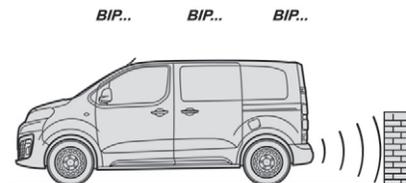
Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

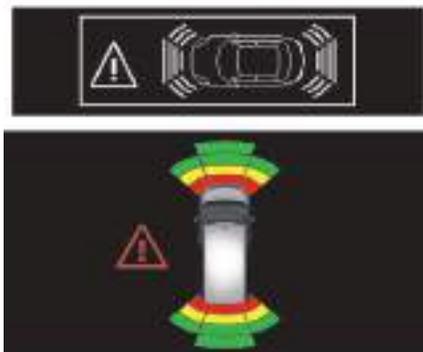
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen or the instrument panel that move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is at its closest, the "Danger" symbol is displayed.

Front parking sensors



In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation

The system is activated and deactivated from the vehicle configuration menu.

Without audio system



To deactivate the system:

 Press the button, its indicator lamp comes on, the system is deactivated.

To activate the system:

 Press this button, the indicator lamp goes off, the system is activated.

With audio system

 In the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, activate/deactivate "Parking assistance".

With the touch screen



In the "Driving/Vehicle" menu, activate/deactivate "**Parking sensors**".

- The system will be automatically deactivated where a towbar or towbar-mounted bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed as recommended by a CITROËN dealer).

i When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

Operating fault

When engaging reverse and depending on the vehicle's equipment, in the event of a fault:

SERVICE



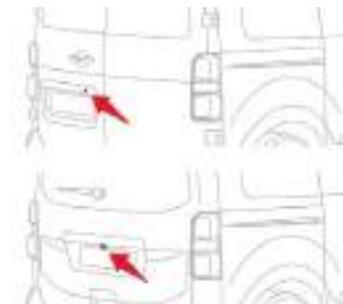
This warning lamp comes on and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.



The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Reversing camera with display in the interior mirror



The visual aid reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The function may be supplemented by parking sensors.



The image is displayed in the interior mirror.

6



The blue lines represent the width of your vehicle including the mirrors.

The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper and the thin blue lines respectively 1 m (A) and 2 m (B).

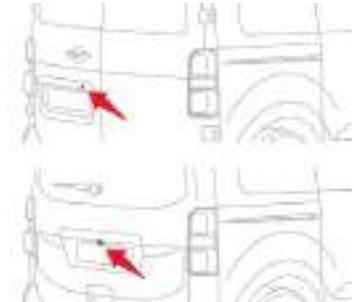
! They are represented by lines marked "on the ground" and do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: other vehicles, etc.).

Some deformation of the image is normal. It is normal to see part of the number plate displayed at the bottom of the screen.

! Opening the tailgate or rear door (depending on equipment) can interfere with the display. If a side door is open, allow for the space it occupies.

! Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Visiopark 1



This system allows the near surroundings of the vehicle to be viewed in the display screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.

The parking sensors in the rear and/or front bumper complete the information on the view from above the vehicle (right-hand part).

In addition to the view from above the vehicle (right-hand part) several types of view can be displayed (left-hand part):

- standard rear view,
- 180° rear view,
- rear zoom view.



The system displays the contextual view (left-hand part) as well as the view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. AUTO mode is activated by default. In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information received from the parking sensors. The 180° view is only available via the menus.

Principle of operation



Using the rear camera, the vehicle's surroundings are recorded during a manoeuvre. An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the blue brackets) in real time and as the vehicle progresses. This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. This image is automatically erased if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

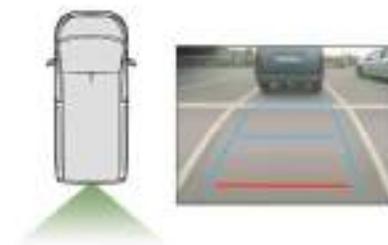
! The images provided by the cameras may be distorted by the environment (external conditions, driving mode, etc.). The presence of areas in shadow, bright sunlight, or poor lighting conditions may make the image dark and reduce contrast.

i The display disappears above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h). The system is automatically deactivated about 7 seconds after coming out of reverse or on opening a door, the boot.

Rear views

Engage reverse gear to activate the camera, located on the boot, rear door.

"Standard view"



The area to the rear of your vehicle is displayed in the screen.

The blue outline represents the width of your vehicle (with mirrors): its orientation depends on the position of the steering wheel.

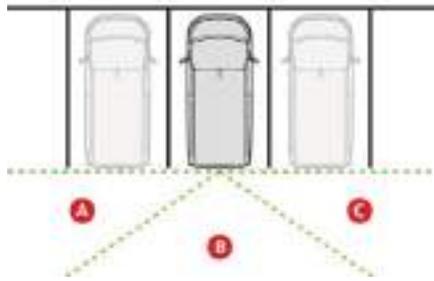
The red line represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper and the two blue lines, 1 m and 2 m respectively.

This view is available with AUTO view or by selecting of the view in the change view menu.

"180° view"

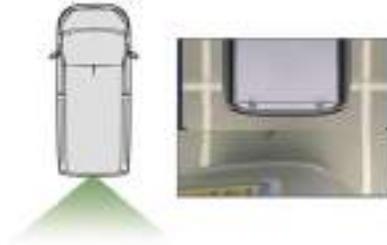


180° view makes it possible to reverse out of a parking space while being able to see the arrival of vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It is made up of the following:



This view is available only from the view selection menu.

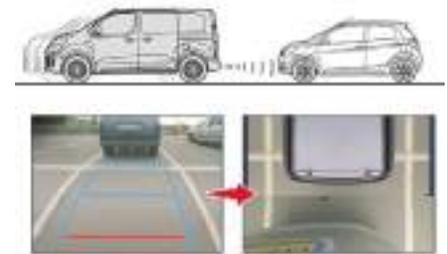
"Zoom view"



The camera memorises the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO view or by selecting of the view in the change view menu.

! The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings. Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the side views using the mirrors during the manoeuvre.

"AUTO mode"



This mode is activated by default. When an obstacle approaches at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) and using sensors located on the rear bumper, this mode switches from the rear view to the top view automatically.

Quick start mode

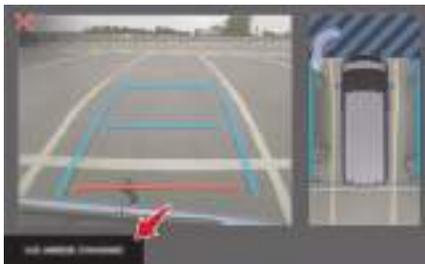


This mode displays, as quickly as possible, the contextual view (left-hand part) and the view from above the vehicle.

A message is displayed advising you to check your vehicle's surroundings before starting the manoeuvre.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse. The function is displayed on the touch screen. To close the window displayed, press on the red cross at the top left of the window.



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

On display of the sub-menu, select one of the four views:

 "Standard view".

 "180° view".

 "Zoom view".

 "AUTO mode".

i The system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a tow-bar (vehicle fitted with a tow-bar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).

! Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly. Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change.** The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressure (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.



The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.



Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.



Spare wheel

The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by continuous illumination of the lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),
- or
- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

or

- ☞ if it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reset

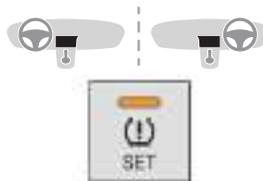
The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

- !** Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
- The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
- The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Initialisation of the system is done with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

i The new pressure parameters saved are treated as reference values by the system.

Without audio system



- ☞ Press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

With audio system



In the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, select "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

With touch screen



In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, select "**Under-inflation initialisation**".

Press on "**Yes**" to **Confirm** the command, initialisation is confirmed by an audible signal and a message.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning light accompanied by illumination of the Service warning light indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i After carrying out any work on the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

6

CITROËN préfère **TOTAL**



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

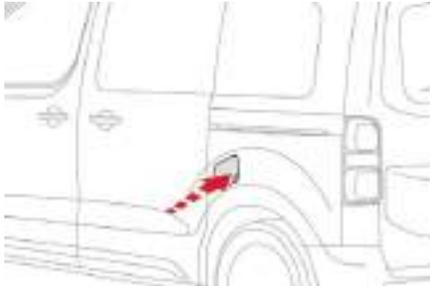
Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

Fuel

Tank capacity: approximately **69** litres.

Opening the fuel filler flap

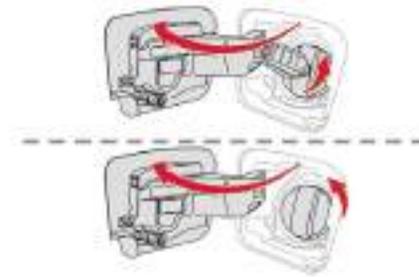


- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ If your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting, unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ Open the fuel filler flap.

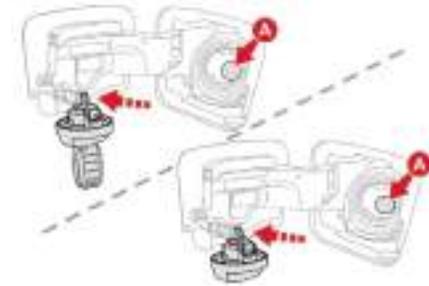
! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

At least 8 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the cap can cause an air intake noise. This vacuum is quite normal, caused by the air tightness of the fuel system.

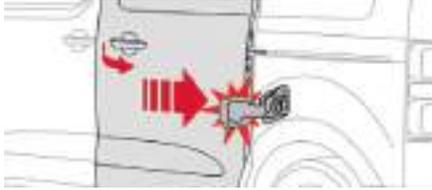
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).



- ☞ If your vehicle has a conventional key, introduce the key into the filler cap, then turn it anti-clockwise.



- ☞ Remove the filler cap, then place it on the carrier located on the filler flap.
- ☞ Introduce the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the metal non-return valve **A**).
- ☞ Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap turning it clockwise.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! If your vehicle has sliding side doors, do not open the left-hand sliding door as there is a risk of damaging the fuel filler flap when refuelling.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

! If you have added the wrong fuel, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message.

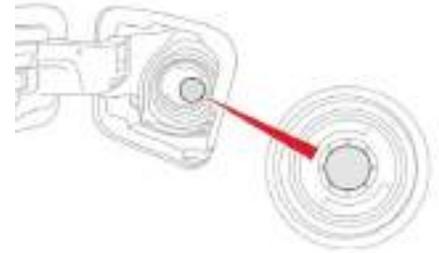
When it first comes on, **less than 8 litres** of fuel remain in the tank. Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel. Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into your Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

i **Travelling abroad**

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B7

B10

XTL

B20

B30

B20

The use of B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 is possible with your Diesel engine.

B30

However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).



The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type diesel fuels could entail an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

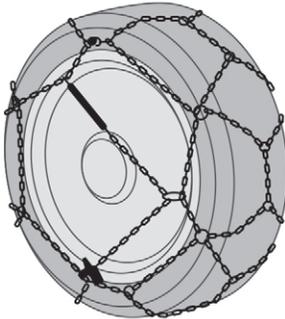
Travelling abroad

i **Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.**
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact the dealer.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

i The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.



i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
215/65 R16	12 mm link
215/60 R17	KONIG K-SUMMIT VAN K84
225/55 R17	

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and, if necessary, put wheel chocks against the wheels to prevent your vehicle from sliding.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few seconds, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixtures is in contact with the wheel rim.

! It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN tow-bars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the tow-bar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the tow-bar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

! Please respect the maximum authorised towable weights, indicated on the registration certificate or in your vehicle's technical data.

i For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly when towing, refer to the associated section.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Roof bars / Roof rack

! Recommendations

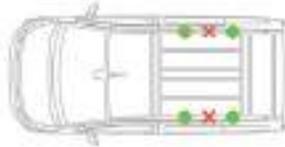
- ☞ Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Lash the load down securely and fit a warning flag if it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds (stability may be affected).
- ☞ When not in use, the roof bars should be removed.

- i** If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the mountings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

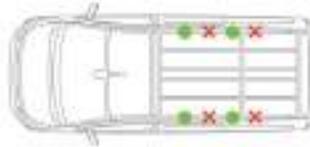
7

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

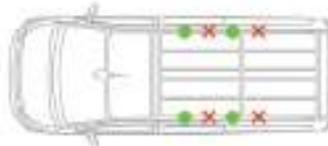
Roof bars



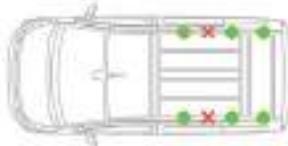
XS



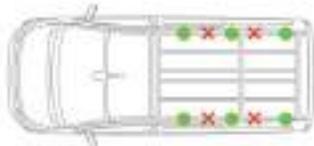
M



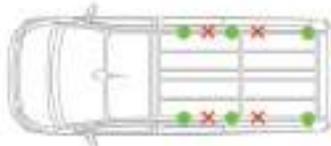
XL



XS



M



XL

To fit the transverse roof bars, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:

- ☞ open the fixing covers on each bar,
- ☞ put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ☞ ensure that roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them),
- ☞ close the fixing covers on each bar.

The bars can be interchanged and are adaptable to each pair of fixing points.

Use the green positions.

Authorised range **max.** mass:

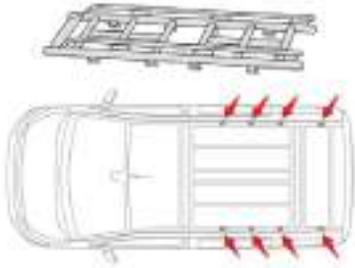
- On 2 roof bars: 100 kg,
- Distributed over 3 roof bars: 150 kg.



Roof racks

Authorised range **max.** mass:

- for XS: 140 kg,
- for M and XL: 170 kg.



To fit a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:

- ☞ place the roof rack on the roof aligned with the fixing points and secure each one in turn,
- ☞ ensure that roof rack is correctly fitted (by shaking it).

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper



- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades in the middle of the windscreen (maintenance position).

Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- ☞ Unclip and remove the wiper blade.

Fitting

- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Carefully lower the wiper arm.

After reassembling a front wiper

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper lever again to park the wiper blades.

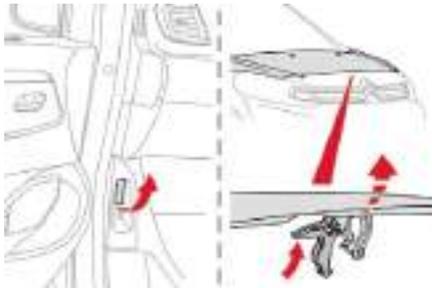
Bonnet



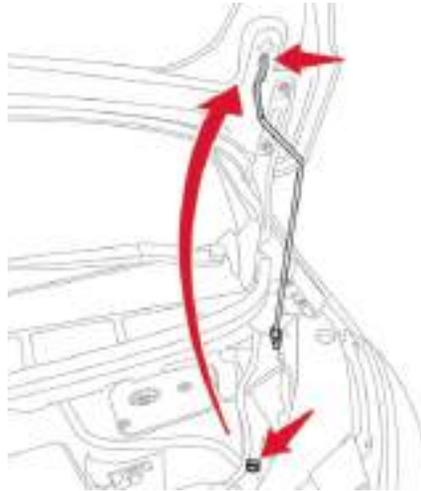
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

Opening

- ☞ Open the door.



- ☞ Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.
- ☞ Lift the safety catch, then raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

! Do not open the bonnet when there is a very strong wind.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).
In order to avoid damaging the electrical units, you **must never** use high pressure washing to clean the engine compartment.

Closing

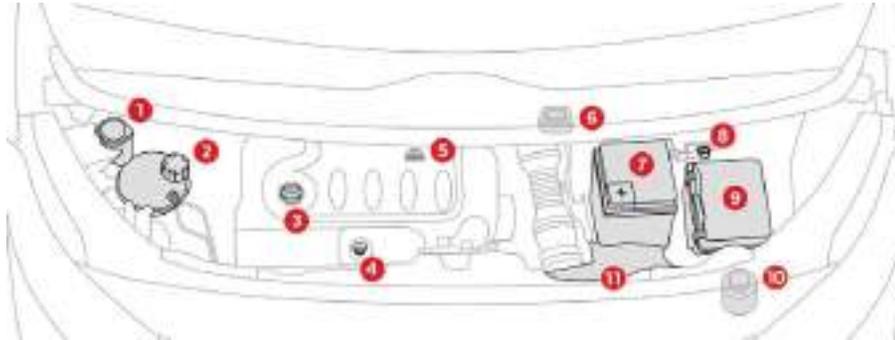
- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine

Diesel



This engine is an example only. The location of the dipstick and engine oil filler cap, as well as the priming pump may vary.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir. 2. Engine coolant reservoir. 3. Engine oil filler cap. 4. Engine oil dipstick. 5. Priming pump. 6. Brake fluid filler cap. 7. Battery. 8. Remote earth point ("-" terminal). 9. Fusebox. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. Power steering fluid reservoir. 11. Air filter. |
|---|--|

! The diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:

- Never carry out any work on the system yourself.
- HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

Specialist knowledge is needed for any work on the system, which can only be assured by CITROËN dealers.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

7



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

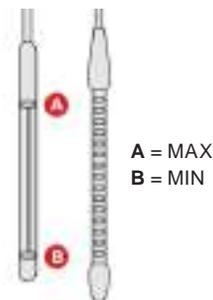
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Draining the circuit

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. Verify this, with the engine off, by reading the level on the filler neck.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine cool.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it. If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up. A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).

Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (diesel with particle filter)

SERVICE



A low additive level is indicated by illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Filter, air



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

Filter, passenger compartment



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message about the risk of the filter clogging up.

- As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

- On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



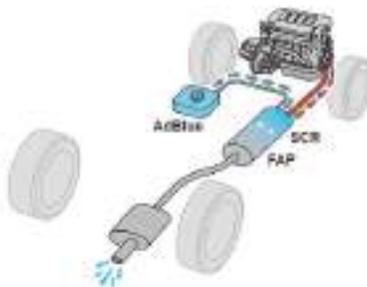
For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)



To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the new Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

By using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 22 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of around 6,000 – 9,000 miles (10,000 – 15,000 km). An alert system is triggered automatically when the remaining range reaches 1,500 miles (2,400 km), i.e. once the reserve level has been reached.

Several alerts are triggered successively during the remaining 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

If the estimated distance travelled by your vehicle between two services is greater than 12,000 miles (20,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is defective, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling the distance of 650 miles (1,100 km), a system preventing the engine starting will be triggered automatically.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **warning lamps** and the associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Important**

If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty (which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine) you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

Topping up with AdBlue®

Given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.

You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in all weather conditions.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle. Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Practical information

Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

- ! Never dilute AdBlue® with water.
- ! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.



The supply in a non-drip container or bottle simplifies topping up. Containers are available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes below around -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles or containers be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year. If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

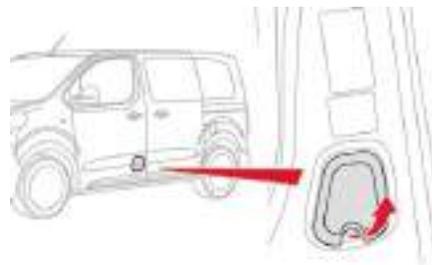
- ! Never store bottles or containers of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

i In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, in freezing weather, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

Procedure

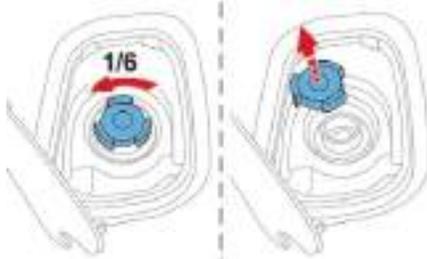
In cold weather, before performing the top-up ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

- ☞ Before topping up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
 - ☞ Switch off the ignition to stop the engine and remove the key from the switch.
- or
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "**START/STOP**" button to stop the engine.
- ☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, open the left front door.





- ☞ From below, pull the black cover.



- ☞ Turn the blue cap 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Lift off the cap.



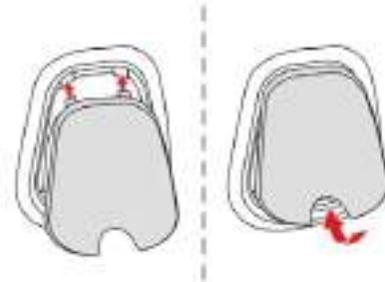
- ☞ Take a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! **Important:** if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 4 litres and no more than 10 litres.

- ☞ After emptying the container, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any fluid is spilt or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth. If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.



- ☞ Refit the black cover, starting at the top.

- ☞ Close the door.

! **Important: when topping up after running out of AdBlue**, signalled by the message "**Top up AdBlue: starting impossible**", you must wait for about 5 minutes before switching the ignition on again, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the remote control key into the ignition switch, or placing the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle.** Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

Advice on care

General recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the warranty and maintenance record.

- !** Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle:
- Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products. Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
 - When using a high pressure washer on stubborn dirt, avoid prolonged use on the headlamps, the lamps and their edges to avoid damaging their lacquer finish and seals.
 - Never use an abrasive sponge to clean persistent dirt, as this may scratch the paint surface. Use a soft cloth with soapy water instead.
 - When washing your vehicle, never clean the interior with a water jet.
 - When washing your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure and lock your doors and, depending on the version you have, remove the key and deactivate the "**Hands-Free Tailgate Access**" system.

- Never use high pressure washing to clean the engine compartment, in order to avoid damaging the electrical units.
- Liquids carried in an open vessel (a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Depending on the version you have, in order to avoid damaging or unpeeling the stickers on the bodywork, you are strongly advised against using high-pressure cleaners to wash your vehicle. It is recommended that you wash it using a high-flow water jet and rinse the vehicle down using demineralised water.

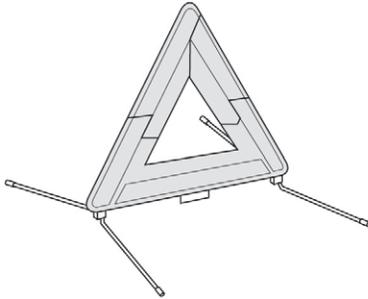
Only a microfibre cloth is recommended for wiping your vehicle, it must be clean and used gently.

i It is always preferable to have paint repairs carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning triangle

This safety equipment should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps. Its presence in the vehicle is mandatory.

Placing the triangle on the road



- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Refer to the manufacturer's instructions on unfolding and assembly supplied with the triangle.

i The triangle is available as an accessory; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

i For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

In the event of a breakdown

Other engines

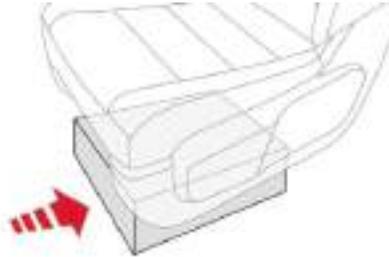
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the engine bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover to access the priming pump.



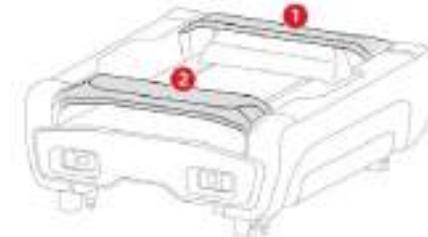
- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the style cover in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Tool box

Access

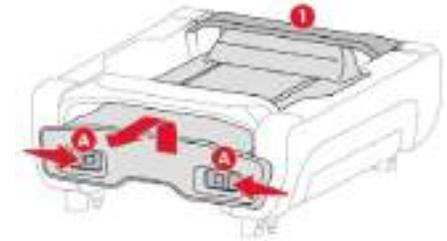


The tool box is located under the left-hand front seat.

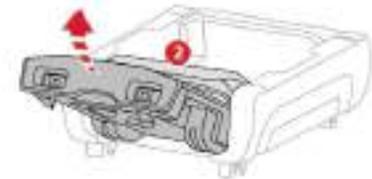


i As a safety measure, bars **1** and **2** prevent the box escaping from its housing, if it is not correctly secured.

Removing

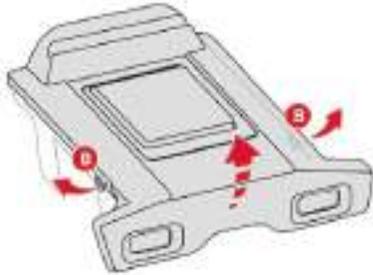


- ☞ Press latches **A** and slide them inwards to release the box.
- ☞ Lift the box slightly then pull it as far as it will go to take it past bar **1**.



- ☞ Then, lift the box upwards to take it past bar **2**.

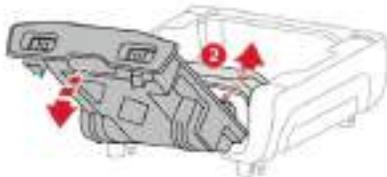
Opening



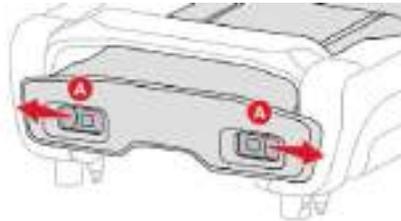
- ☞ Unclip fixings **B** on the cover, then open it for access to the tools.

Storage

- ☞ Refit the cover on the box and clip fixings **B**.



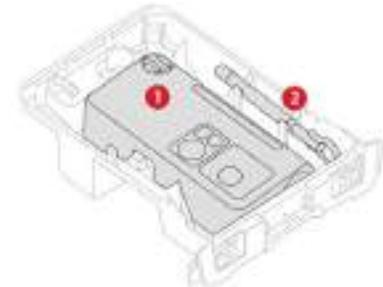
- ☞ Position the box with the front inclined upwards.
- ☞ To take it past bar **2**, push the box in and down.
- ☞ To take it past bar **1**, raise the box slightly then push it fully in.



- ☞ Once the box is **fully home** in its housing, push it against the floor carpet then slide latches **A** outwards to secure it.

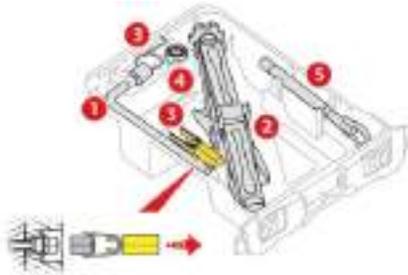
i Pull on the box to check that it is secure in its housing.

With temporary puncture repair kit



1. 12 V compressor. Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Towing eye

With a spare wheel



1. Wheelbrace.
For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
2. Jack.
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cap/hub cap removal tools.
If your vehicle is fitted with it, it removes the wheel bolt head covers on alloy wheels or the finisher on steel wheels.
4. Socket for the wheel security bolts. For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Towing eye.

i These tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to its equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.

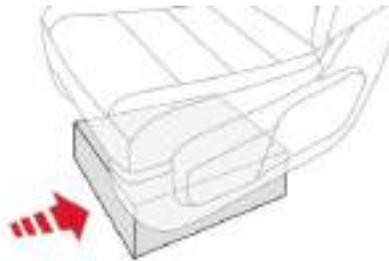
Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit comprises a compressor and a sealant cartridge.

It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre. You are then able to go to the nearest garage. It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit

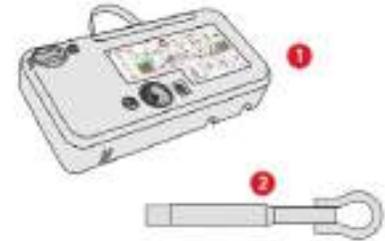


This kit is stowed in the tool box.

i For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

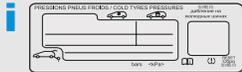
List of tools

These tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for any other purposes.



1. 12 V compressor.
Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Towing eye.

i For more information on **Towing**, refer to the associated section.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

! The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.
Only use the two 12 V sockets, located at the **front**, to connect your compressor.

Kit content description



- A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
- B. On I / off O switch.
- C. Deflation button.
- D. Pressure gauge (in bar and psi).



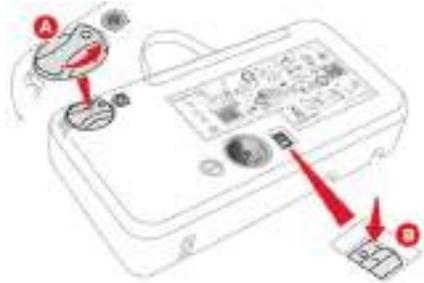
- E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.
- F. Sealant cartridge.
- G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
- H. Speed limit sticker.

i The speed limit sticker must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

In the event of a breakdown

Repair procedure

1. Sealant



☞ Switch off the ignition.



- ☞ Turn selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- ☞ Check that switch **B** is in position **O**.

i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

! Take care, this product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

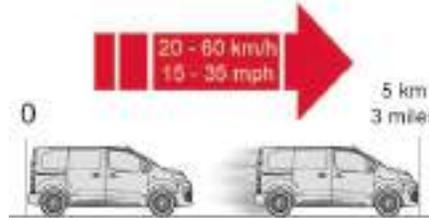
i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the **B** switch at the I position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar. The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

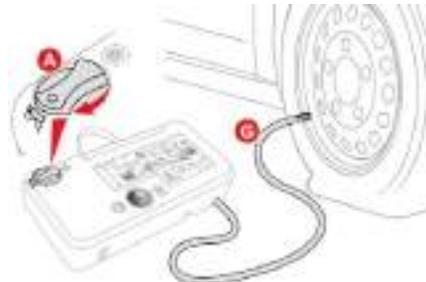
I If after approx. five to seven minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit within reach.



- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

2. Inflation



- ☞ Turn selector **A** to the "air" position.

- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the tyre valve.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Restart the vehicle and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will let you know if the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

In the event of a breakdown

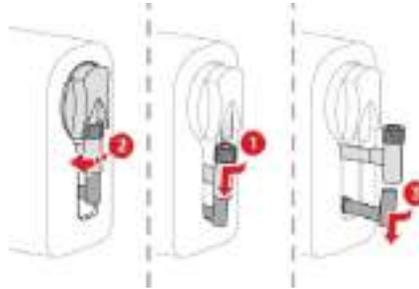


- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position I; to deflate: switch **B** in position O and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

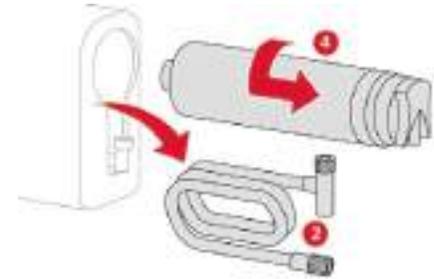
A significant loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

Removing the pipe and cartridge



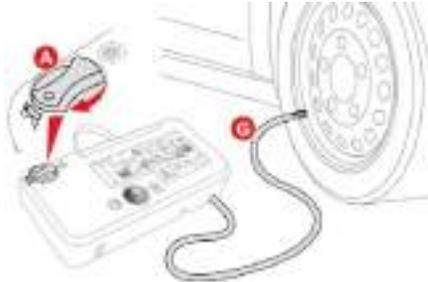
- ☞ Turn pipe assembly **2** to the left until it contacts the unit.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Pull the centre hose out slightly **2**, then disconnect connector **3** from the air intake hose by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.



- ☞ Remove pipe assembly **2**.
 - ☞ Keep the compressor vertical.
 - ☞ Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.
- To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Take care of fluid discharge.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; it must be replaced even if only partly used.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer. Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures



You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.



- ☞ Turn selector **A** to the "air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.



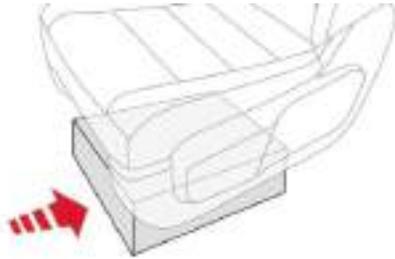
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position I; to deflate: switch **B** in position O and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a breakdown

Spare wheel

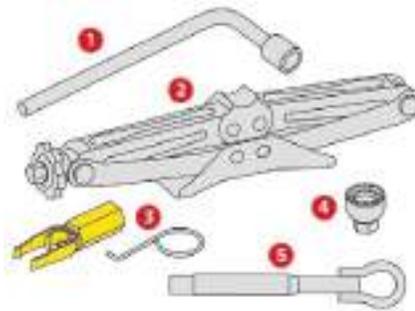
Access to the tools



The tools are stowed in the tool box.

i For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

List of tools



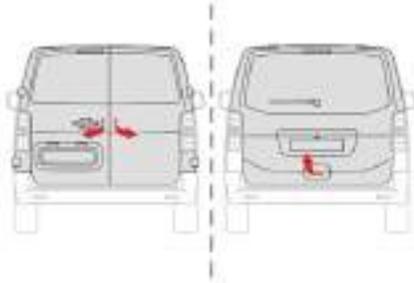
1. Wheel wrench.
For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
2. Jack.
Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover/trim removal tool.
If your vehicle is fitted with it, it removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the finisher on steel wheels.
4. Socket for the wheel security bolts.
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Towing eye.

i For more information on **Towing**, refer to the associated section.

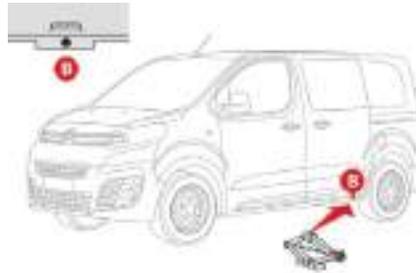
! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle. If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. The jack does not require any maintenance.

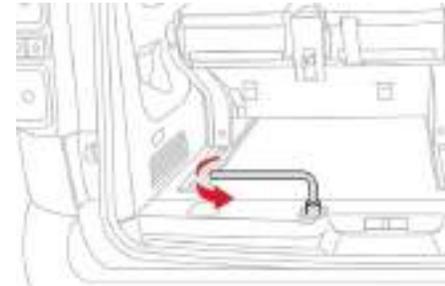
Access to the spare wheel



- ☞ Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.
- ☞ Open the side-hinged rear doors or the tailgate, according to the configuration of your vehicle.

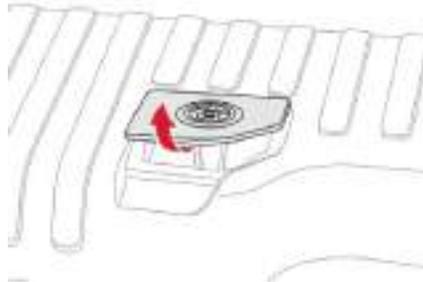


- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with a towbar, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

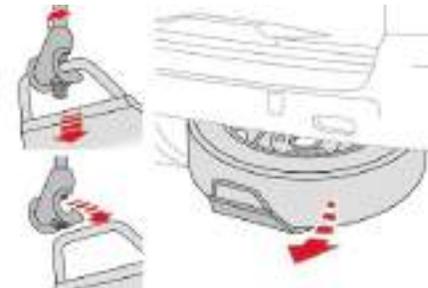


- ☞ Turn the bolt anti-clockwise using the wheelbrace (about 14 turns) until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.

Removing



- ☞ Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.



- ☞ Release the carrier from the hook, take the spare wheel and place it next to the wheel to be changed.

I To avoid any unwanted opening of the electric side door(s), deactivate the **"Hands-Free Tailgate Access"** function in the vehicle configuration menu. For more information on the **Hands-free sliding side door**, refer to the associated section.

In the event of a breakdown

Refitting



- ☞ Position the wheel facing the carrier.
- ☞ Progressively return the wheel to the basket by pushing alternately at left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.
- ☞ Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace until the basket is fully home.

Tyre in the carrier

If you want to change the size of the tyre on the spare wheel, follow the instructions below.

Original tyre size	XS-M	XL
215/65 R16	Placing a 225 wheel in the carrier is prohibited.	There is no restriction.
215/60 R17		
215/60 R17 M&S		
225/55 R17	Placing a 215 wheel in the carrier is not recommended (risk of noise).	

i A punctured tyre of size 215 or 225 can be placed in the carrier.

Removing a wheel

i Parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.

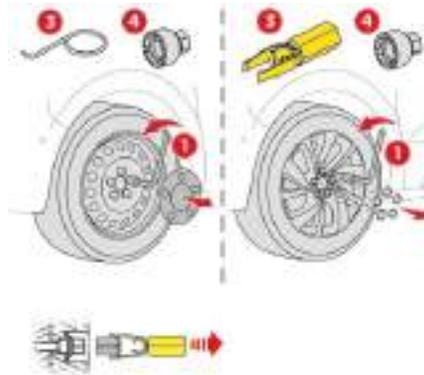
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.

With an electronic gearbox, place the gear selector to position **A** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.

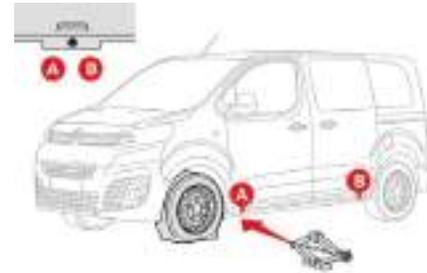
Apply the parking brake and check that the warning lamp is on in the instrument panel.

The passengers must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



- ☞ If your vehicle has steel wheels, remove the hub cap using tool **3**.
- ☞ If your vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the cap from each wheel bolt using tool **3**.
- ☞ If your vehicle has security wheel bolts, fit security bolt socket **4** to wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **1**.

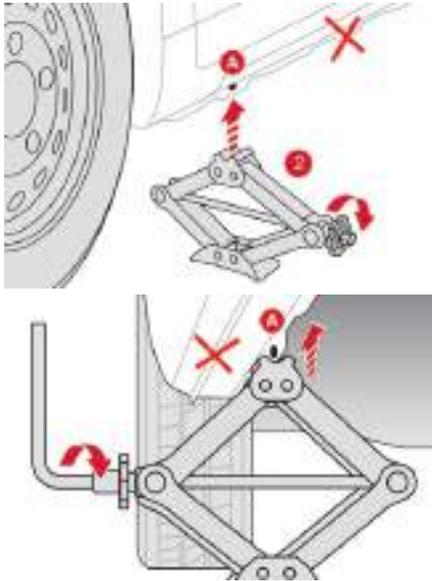


- ☞ Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

! Do not use:

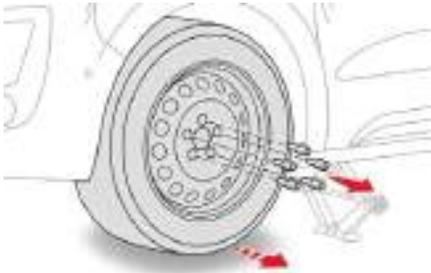
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.

In the event of a breakdown



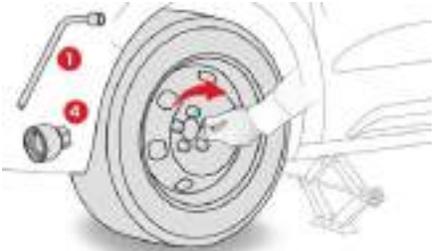
- ☞ Extend jack **2**, using the hand wheel, until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used, having the contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle using wheelbrace **1**, until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is positioned only at one of the jacking points, either **A** or **B**, under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping – Risk of injury!

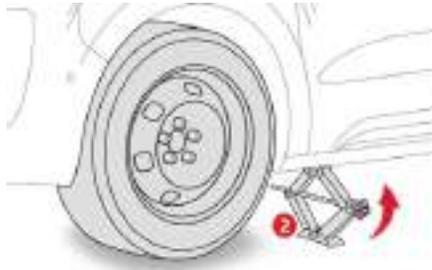


- ☞ Remove the bolts and keep them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

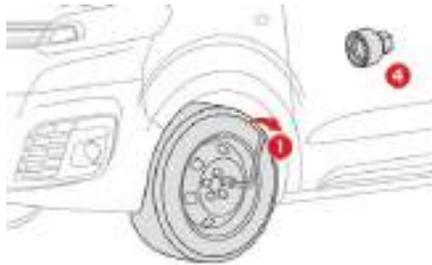
Fitting a wheel



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- ☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, **pre-tighten** the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- ☞ **Pre-tighten** the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack **2** and detach it.



- ☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbracket **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- ☞ **Tighten** the other bolts using wheelbracket **1** only.
- ☞ Stow the tools in the tool box.

i Tyre under-inflation detection

The steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.

! After changing a wheel

Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier. Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Have the punctured wheel checked. After inspection, the technician will let you know if the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

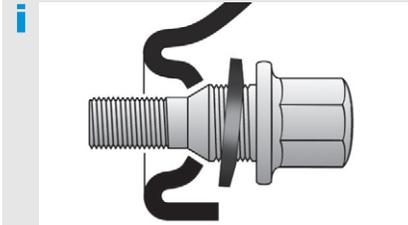
i Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

i If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.

i For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

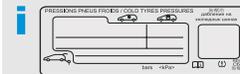
i Wheel with hub cap

When refitting the wheel, refit the hub cap starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.



Fastening the steel wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
 - ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

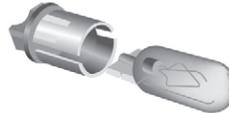
- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
 - ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Types of bulb

Various types of bulb are fitted to your vehicle. To remove them:

Type A



All glass bulb: pull gently as it is fitted by pressure.

Type B



Bayonet bulb: press on the bulb then turn it anti-clockwise.

Type C



Halogen bulb: release the retaining spring from its housing.

Type D



Halogen bulb: turn the bulb anti-clockwise.

! Halogen bulbs must be replaced with lamp off and cold (risk of severe burns). Do not touch the bulb directly, use a lint-free cloth.

Type E



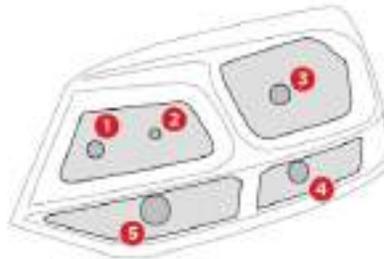
Xenon bulb: xenon bulbs must be changed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.

i When each operation has been completed, check the operation of the lighting.

Front lamps

Halogen headlamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and in particular the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

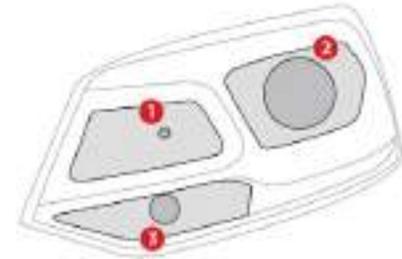


1. Sidelamps.
Type A, W5W-5W
2. Main beam headlamps.
Type C, H1-55W
3. Dipped beam headlamps.
Type C, H7-55W
4. Daytime running lamps.
Type A, W21W LL-21W
5. Direction indicators.
Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)

i For H7 type bulbs with lugs, etc. take care to observe their correct installation so as to ensure the best lighting performance.

Xenon headlamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and in particular the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

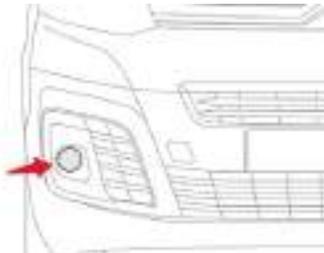


1. Main beam headlamps.
Type C, H1-55W
2. Dipped beam headlamps.
Type E, D8S 25W
3. Direction indicators.
Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)

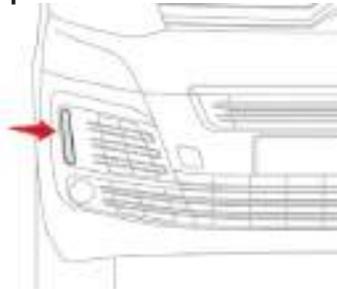
In the event of a breakdown

Foglamps

Type D, H11-55W



Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps



If fitted to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of this type of LED lamp and light guide.

A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

Direction indicator side repeater

Type A, WY5W-5W (amber)

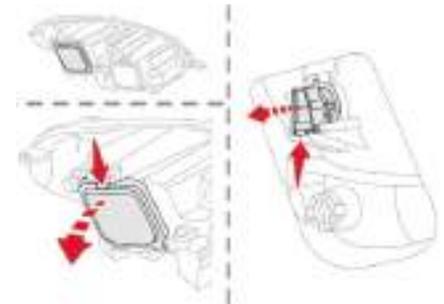


- Push the repeater towards the rear and disengage it.
- When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then bring it towards the rear.

Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Dipped beam headlamps (halogen headlamps)

Type C, H7-55W

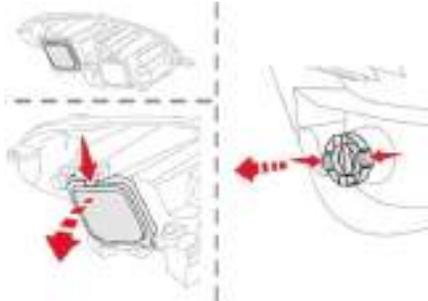


- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Press the lower clip on the electrical connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, proceed in reverse order.

i When refitting the connector and bulb in the lamp, push the assembly into its housing until it clicks into place.

Daytime running lamps (halogen headlamps)

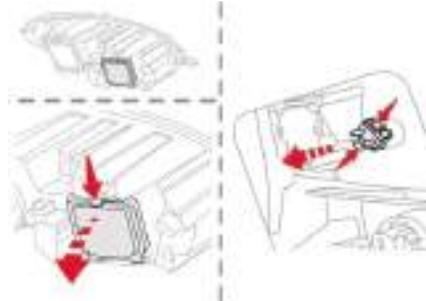
Type A, W21W LL-21W



- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Press the two side clips on the electrical connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Sidelamps (halogen headlamps)

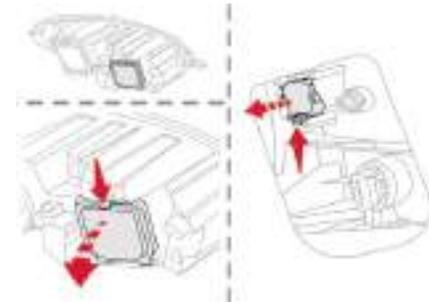
Type A, W5W



- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Press the two side clips on the electrical connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Main beam headlamps (halogen headlamps)

Type C, H1-55W



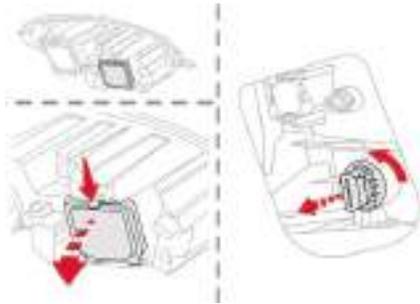
- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Press the lower clip on the electrical connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, proceed in reverse order.

! Be aware that the area behind the right-hand headlamp (facing forwards) may be hot, with the risk of burns (overflow pipe).

In the event of a breakdown

Direction indicators (halogen headlamps)

Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)

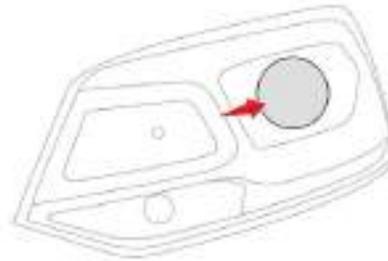


- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
 - ☞ Remove the bulb holder.
 - ☞ Change the faulty bulb.
- To refit, proceed in reverse order.

i Faster flashing of the direction indicator light (left or right) indicates a failed bulb on that side.

Dipped beam headlamps (xenon headlamps)

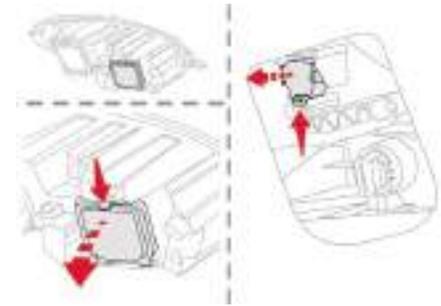
Type E, D8S 25W



i Replacement of D8S xenon bulbs must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.
It is recommended that both D8S bulbs be replaced at the same time, in the event of the failure of one of them.

Main beam headlamps (xenon headlamps)

Type C, H1-55W

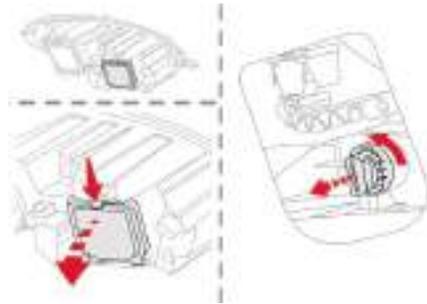


- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
 - ☞ Press the lower clip on the electrical connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i When refitting the connector and bulb in the lamp, push the assembly into its housing until it clicks into place.

Direction indicators (xenon headlamps)

Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)



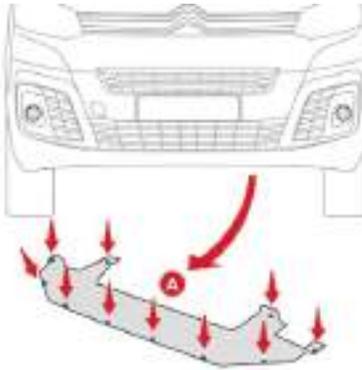
- ☞ Press the upper clip on the cover then tip it rearwards to remove it.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

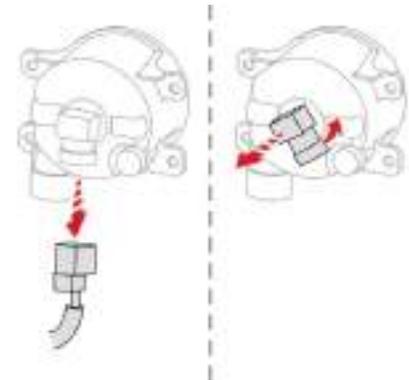
i Faster flashing of the direction indicator light (left or right) indicates a failed bulb on that side.

Foglamps

Type D, H11-55W



- ☞ Below the front bumper, unscrew the fixing screws for the deflector **A**.
- ☞ Remove the deflector **A**.



- ☞ Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Remove the bulb holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

i You can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

In the event of a breakdown

Rear lamps (side-hinged rear doors)

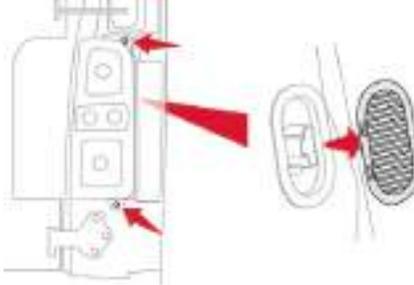
For more information on **Changing a bulb** and in particular, the types of bulbs, refer to the associated section.



1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.
Type B, P21/5W-21/5W
2. Direction indicators.
Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)
3. Reversing lamps.
Type B, P21W-21W
4. Foglamps/sidelamps.
Type B, P21/4W-21/4W

i For vehicles with interior trim, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the work done.

- ☞ Identify the failed bulb then open the rear doors.



- ☞ From inside, remove the air vent, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ From outside, unscrew the two fixing screws.



- ☞ While holding the lamp in place, press the clip towards the inside then carefully remove the lamp.
- ☞ Disconnect the electrical connector.



- ☞ Spread the 3 lugs slightly, then extract the bulb holder.
- ☞ Remove the failed bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Third brake lamp (side-hinged doors)

Type A, W5W-5W



- ☞ Open the left-hand rear door.



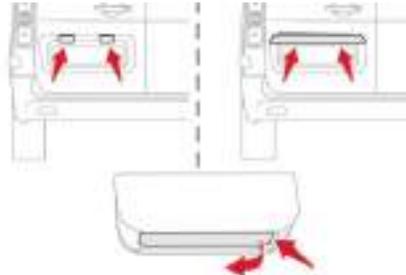
- ☞ Remove the plastic cover using a small screwdriver.
- ☞ Using a screwdriver through the aperture, push the lamp towards the outside.
- ☞ Disconnect the electrical connector.

- ☞ Remove the lamp.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lamp to clip it in place.

Number plate lamps (side-hinged doors)

Type A, W5W-5W



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

Courtesy lamps (front and rear)

Type A, W5W-5W



- ☞ Unclip the lens by inserting a thin screwdriver into the cut-outs at each side of the lamp.
- ☞ Pull out the bulb and replace it.
- ☞ Clip the lens in place and ensure that it is secure.

Foglamps (tailgate)

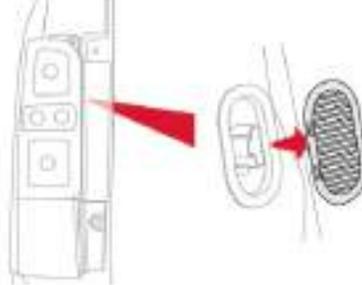
For more information on **Changing a bulb** and in particular, the types of bulbs, refer to the associated section.



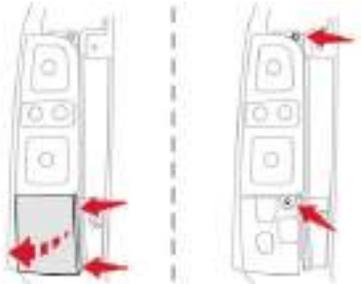
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.
Type B, P21/5W-21/5W
2. Direction indicators.
Type B, PY21W-21W (amber)
3. Reversing lamps.
Type B, P21W-21W
4. Foglamps/sidelamps.
Type B, P21/4W-21/4W

I For vehicles with interior trim, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the work done.

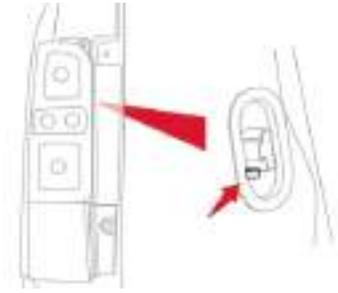
- ☞ Identify the defective bulb then open the boot.



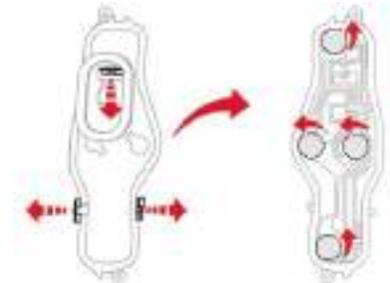
- ☞ From inside, remove the cover, if your vehicle has one.



- ☞ From the outside, press the interior clips of the plastic finisher then tilt it outwards to remove it.
- ☞ Unscrew the two lamp fixing screws.



- ☞ While holding the lamp in place, press the clip towards the inside then carefully remove the lamp.
- ☞ Disconnect the electrical connector.



- ☞ Spread the 3 lugs slightly, then extract the bulb holder.
- ☞ Remove the failed bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

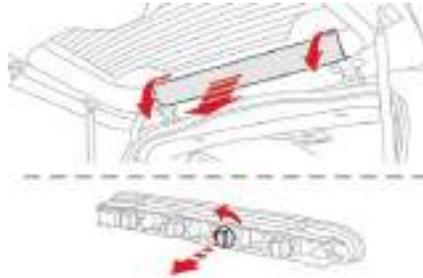
To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Third brake lamp (tailgate)

Type A, W5W-5W



- ☞ Open the tailgate.



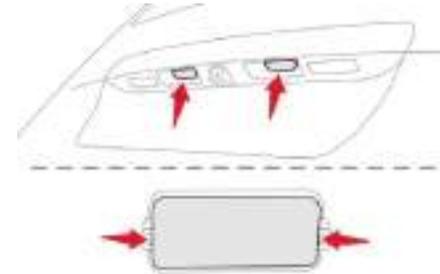
- ☞ Unclip the trim at each end by turning it upwards.
- ☞ Pull the trim to unclip the centre clips, then remove it.
- ☞ Using a screwdriver through the aperture, push the lamp towards the outside.
- ☞ Disconnect the electrical connector.
- ☞ Remove the lamp.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

For reassembly, carry out these operations in reverse order.

To refit the lamp and trim, press on them to clip them in place.

Number plate lamps (tailgate)

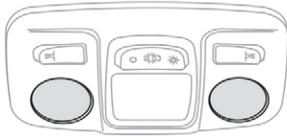
Type A, W5W-5W



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

Courtesy lamps (front and rear)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp and lighting guides, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

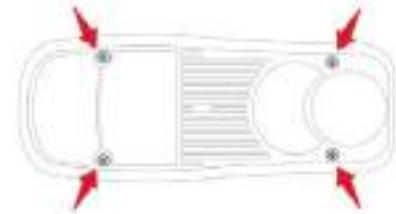
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

Cab floor Rear lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and in particular, the types of bulbs, refer to the associated section.



1. Direction indicators.
Type B, P21W-21W
2. Brake lamps.
Type B, P21W-21W
3. Sidelamps.
Type B, R10W-10W
4. Reversing lamps.
Type B, P21W-21W
5. Foglamps.
Type B, P21W-21W

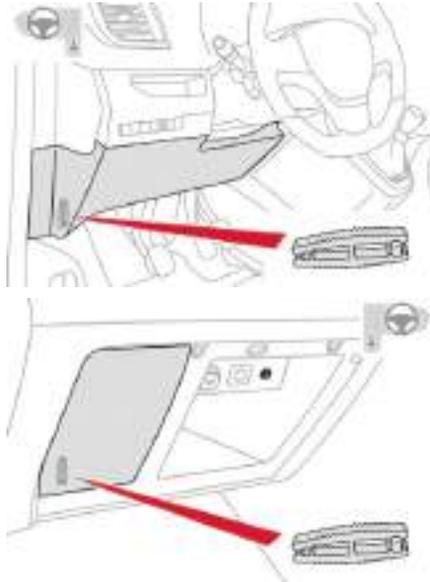


- ☞ Identify the defective bulb.
- ☞ Remove the four lamp unit fixing screws.
- ☞ Pull the lamp unit out towards you.
- ☞ Remove the failed bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ Take the tweezers from its housing.

Changing a fuse

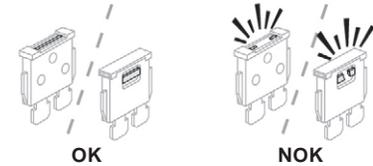
Before changing a fuse, it is necessary to:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ all electrical loads must be switched off,
- ☞ stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ Always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Tweezers

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables opposite may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

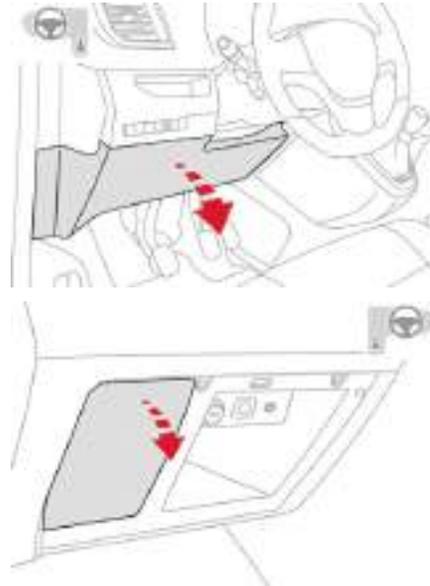
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

i For more information on installing a towbar or equipment of the TAXI type, contact a CITROËN dealer.

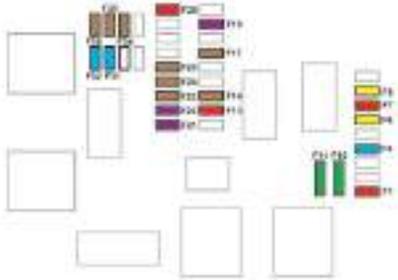
Passenger compartment fuses

Access to the fuses



☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

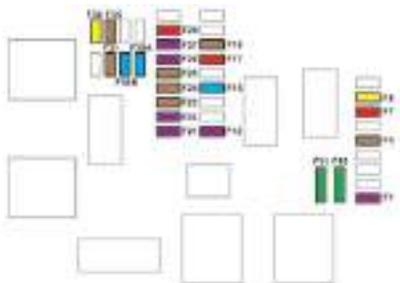
Version 1 (Eco)



The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10	Electric power steering, clutch switch.
F4	15	Audible warning.
F5	20	Front / rear screenwash pump.
F6	20	Front / rear screenwash pump.
F7	10	Rear 12 V accessory socket.
F8	20	Single or double rear wipers.
F10/F11	30	Internal/external locks, front and rear.
F13	10	Front air conditioning controls, audio system controls, gear lever, head-up display.
F14	5	Alarm, emergency and assistance calls
F17	5	Instrument panel.
F19	3	Steering mounted controls.
F21	3	Keyless Entry and Starting or anti-theft system.
F22	3	Rain and sunshine sensor, multifunction detection camera.
F23	5	Seat belt unfastened or not fastened display screen.
F24	5	Touch screen, reversing camera and parking sensors.
F25	5	Airbags.
F29	20	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, navigation.
F31	15	Audio system (+ battery).
F32	15	Front 12 V accessory socket
F34	5	Blind spot monitoring system, door mirror electric controls.
F35	5	Heated washer jets, headlamp beam height control.
F36	5	Torch charger, rear courtesy lamp.

Version 2 (Full)



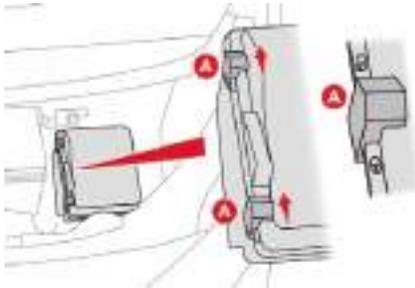
The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.

Fuse N° N°	Rating (A) (A)	Functions
F1	3	Keyless Entry and Starting or anti-theft system.
F5	5	Touch screen, reversing camera and parking sensors.
F7	10	Rear air conditioning controls, Hi-Fi amplifier.
F8	20	Single or double rear wipers.
F10/F11	30	Internal/external locks, front and rear.
F12	3	Alarm.
F17	10	Rear 12 V accessory socket.
F18	5	Emergency and assistance calls.
F21	3	Torch charger, rear courtesy lamp.
F22	3	Glove box lamp, rear courtesy lamps.
F23	5	Blind spot monitoring system, door mirror electric controls.
F24	5	Steering mounted controls.
F25	5	Headlamp beam height control.
F26	3	Seat belt unfastened or not fastened display screen.
F27	3	Rain and sunshine sensor, multifunction detection camera.
F28	10	Front air conditioning controls, radio controls, gear lever, head-up display.
F30A or B	15	Audio system (+ battery).
F31	5	Airbags.
F33	15	Front 12 V accessory socket
F35	5	Instrument panel.
F36	20	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, navigation.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches **A**.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

The fuses described hereafter vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.

Fuse No.	Rating (A) (A)	Functions
F12	5	Heated washer jets.
F14	25	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F15	5	Front radar and emergency braking, electric power steering.
F17	10	Built-in systems interface.
F19	30	Front wiper motor.
F20	15	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	20	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	15	Audible warning.
F23	15	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

In the event of a breakdown

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

- ☞ Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- ☞ Secure the bonnet stay.



- ☞ Remove the plastic cover to access the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one. The battery (-) terminal is not accessible. A remote earth point is provided at the front of the vehicle.



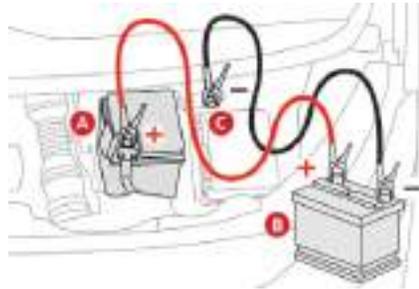
For more information on the **Bonnet** and **Engine**, refer to the associated section.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.



Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster. Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery. The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other. Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.). Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.). Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of backup battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ☞ Disconnect the jump lead cables in reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

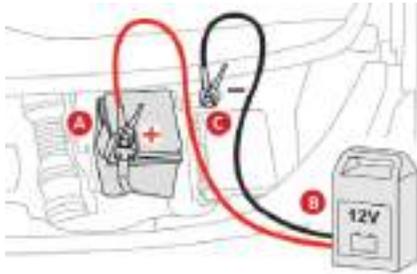
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

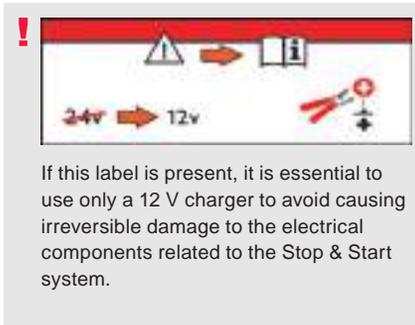
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

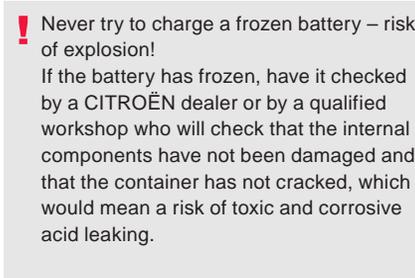
In the event of a breakdown



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect charger **B** cables as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.



Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

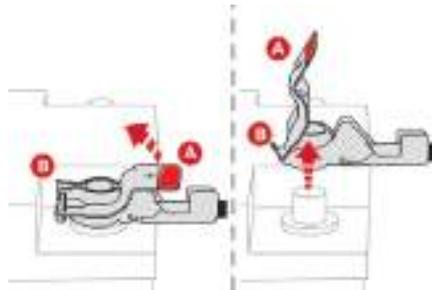
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

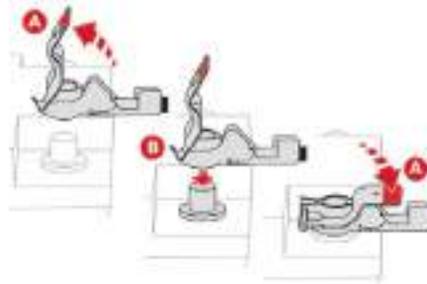
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must reset certain systems yourself, such as:

- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the electric doors,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

In the event of a breakdown

Battery capacity

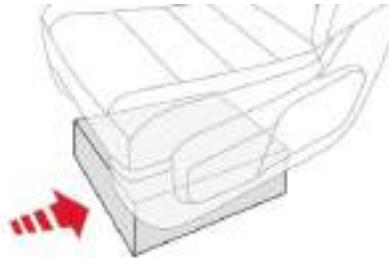
Vehicle length	Rating in Ah (Ampere hours)
XS	480
M	640
XL	720 / 800

! Always replace the battery by one of equivalent specification.

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

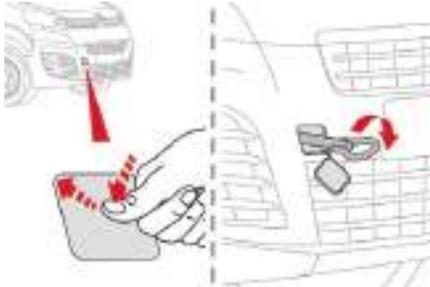


The towing eye is stowed in the tool box.

i For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

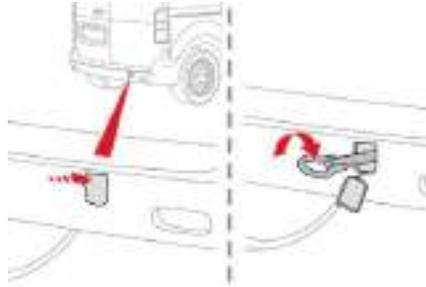
! With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic or electronic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**. Failure to adhere to this specification may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, slide the finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully, until it reaches a stop.
- ☞ Install the tow bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly over a short distance only.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, press the cover (as shown above) to unclip it.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully, until it reaches a stop.
- ☞ Install the tow bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly over a short distance only.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently. When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no more braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available, etc.

Characteristics of the engines and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The recommended nose weight is the vertical load on the towbar ball (removable, with or without tools).

GTW: Gross train weight.

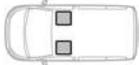
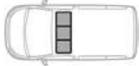
! High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the ambient temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.



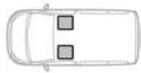
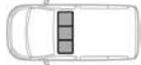
Diesel EURO 5 engines and towed loads

Engines		1.6 litre HDi 90		2 litre HDi 150			
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed (BVM5)		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)		Manual 6-speed (EAT6)	
Code		DV6DU		DW10F			
Regulatory engine type		BHV		AHX			
Length		L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*
Capacity (cm ³)		1,560		1,997			
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		66		110			
Fuel		Diesel					
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	2 seats 	600		1,100		800	
	3 seats 	600		1,100		800	
Unbraked trailer	2-3 seats	600		750			
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	2-3 seats	25		44		32	

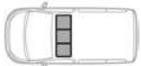
* Increased payload.



Diesel EURO 6.1 engines and towed loads

Engines		1.6 litre BlueHDi 95		1.6 litre BlueHDi 95 S&S		1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed (BVM5)		Manual 6-speed (ETG6)		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)
Code		DV6FDU		DV6FDU		DV6FCU
Regulatory engine type		BHV		BHS		BHX
Length		L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2
Capacity (cm ³)		1,560				
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		70		70		85
Fuel		Diesel				
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	2 seats 	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	1,800
	3 seats 	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	1,800
Unbraked trailer	2-3 seats	750				
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	2-3 seats	72	80	72	80	72

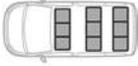
* Increased payload.

Engines		2 litre BlueHDi 120	2 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	2 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S		2 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)	Manual 6-speed (BVM6)	Manual 6-speed (BVM6)		Manual 6-speed (EAT6)	
Code		DW10FE	DW10FE	DW10FD		DW10FC	
Regulatory engine type		AHK	AHK	AHX		AHH	
Length		L1*, L2*, L3*	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*	L1, L2	L1*, L2*, L3*
Capacity (cm ³)		1,997					
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		90		110		130	
Fuel		Diesel					
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	2 seats 	2,500	2,500	2,300	2,500	2,000	2,200
	3 seats 	2,500	2,500	2,300	2,500	2,000	2,200
Unbraked trailer	2-3 seats	750					
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	2-3 seats	100	100	92	100	80	88

* Increased payload.



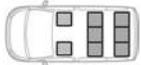
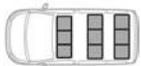
Diesel EURO 4 and 5 engines and towed loads

Engines		1.6 litre HDi 90		2 litre HDi 150				2 litre BlueHDi 150			
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed (BVM5)		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)		Manual 6-speed (EAT6)		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)		Manual 6-speed (EAT6)	
Code		DV6DU		DW10F				DW10FD			
Regulatory engine type		9HH		AHX				AHX			
Length		L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*
Cubic capacity (cm ³)		1,560		1,997				1,997			
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		66		110				110			
Fuel		Diesel									
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	8 seats 	600		1,100		800		1,100		800	
	9 seats 	600		1,100		800		1,100		800	
Unbraked trailer	8-9 seats	600		750							
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	8-9 seats	25		44		32		44		32	

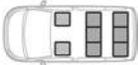
* Increased payload.



Diesel EURO 6.1 engines and towed loads

Engines		1.6 litre BlueHDi 95		1.6 l BlueHDi 95 S&S		1.6 l BlueHDi 115 S&S	
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed (BVM5)		Manual 6-speed (ETG6)		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)	
Code		DV6FDU		DV6FDU		DV6FCU	
Regulatory engine type		BHV		BHS		BHX	
Length		L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*
Cubic capacity (cm³)		1,560					
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		70		70		85	
Fuel		Diesel					
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	8 seats 	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000
	9 seats 	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000
Unbraked trailer	8-9 seats	750					
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	8-9 seats	72	80	72	80	72	80

* Increased payload.

Engines		2 l BlueHDi 150 S&S		2 l BlueHDi 180 S&S	
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed (BVM6)		Manual 6-speed (EAT6)	
Code		DW10FD		DW10FC	
Regulatory engine type		AHX		AHH	
Length		L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*	L1, L2, L3	L2*, L3*
Cubic capacity (cm ³)		1,997			
Max power: CEE standard (kW)		90			
Fuel		Diesel			
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope	8 seats 	2,300	2,500	2,000	2,200
	9 seats 	2,300	2,500	2,000	2,200
Unbraked trailer	8-9 seats	750			
Recommended nose weight (kg) or Trailer nose weight (CVA)	8-9 seats	92	100	80	88

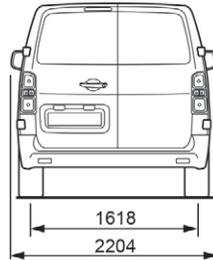
* Increased payload.

Dimensions (in mm)

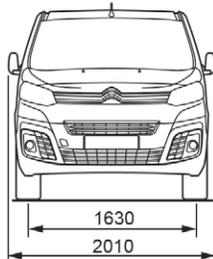
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



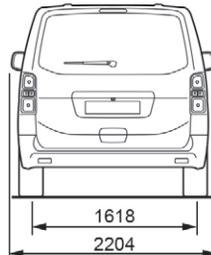
Mirrors folded



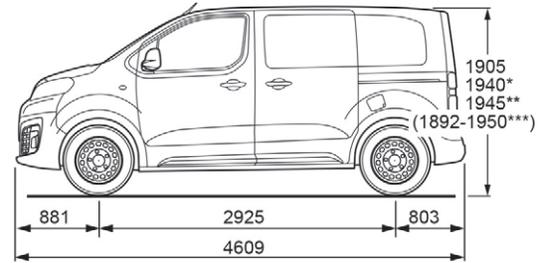
Doors, side-hinged



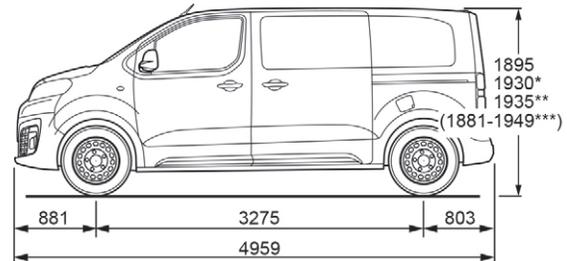
Tailgate



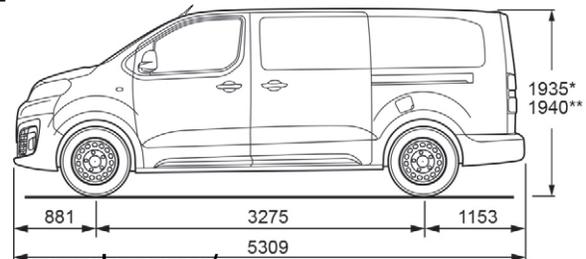
XS



M



XL



* Increased payload.

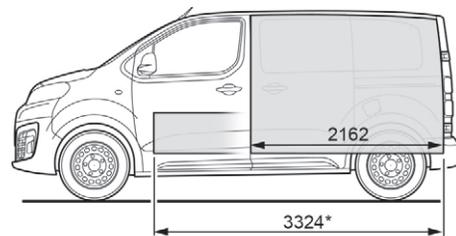
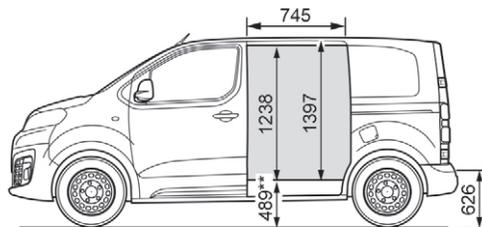
** Payload increased with high body.

*** Depending on the country of sale.

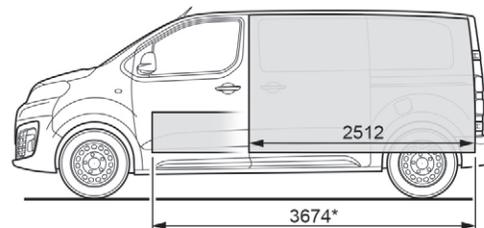
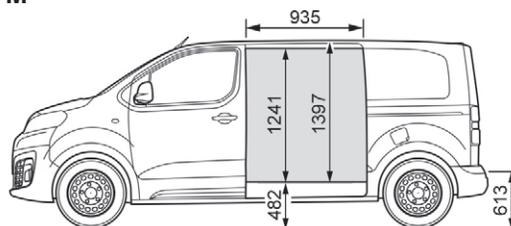
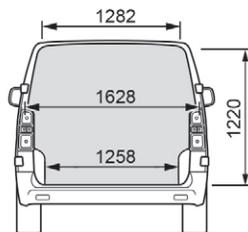
<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>



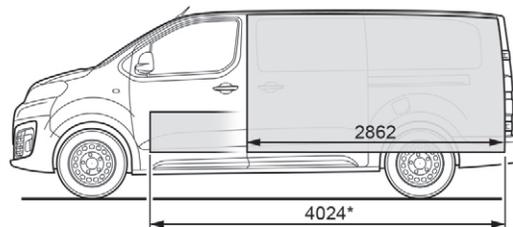
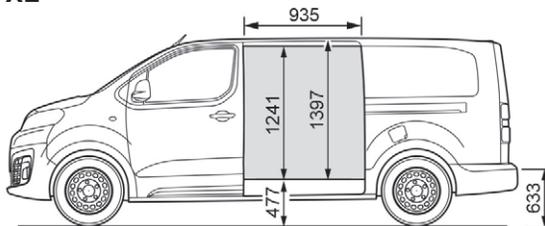
XS



M



XL

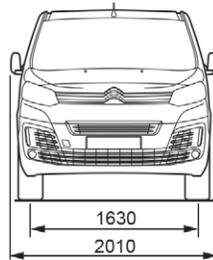


* With Moduwork, flap removed.

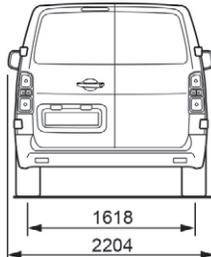
** Vehicle empty and not loaded.



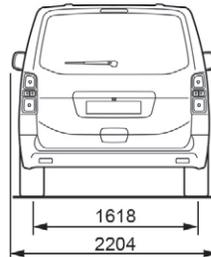
Mirrors folded



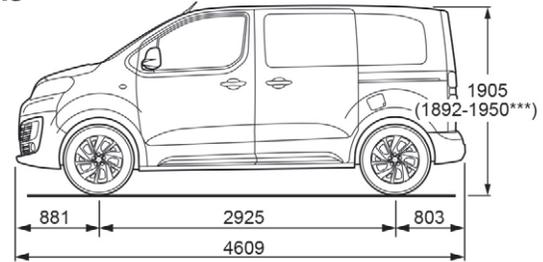
Doors, side-hinged



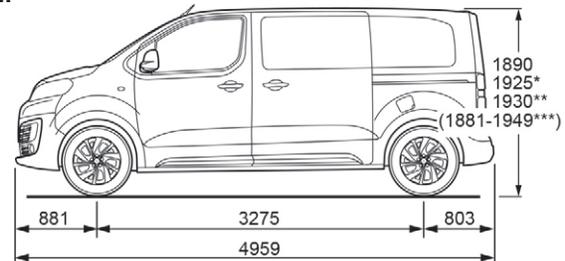
Tailgate



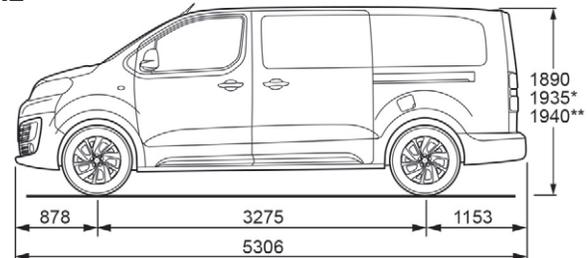
XS



M



XL

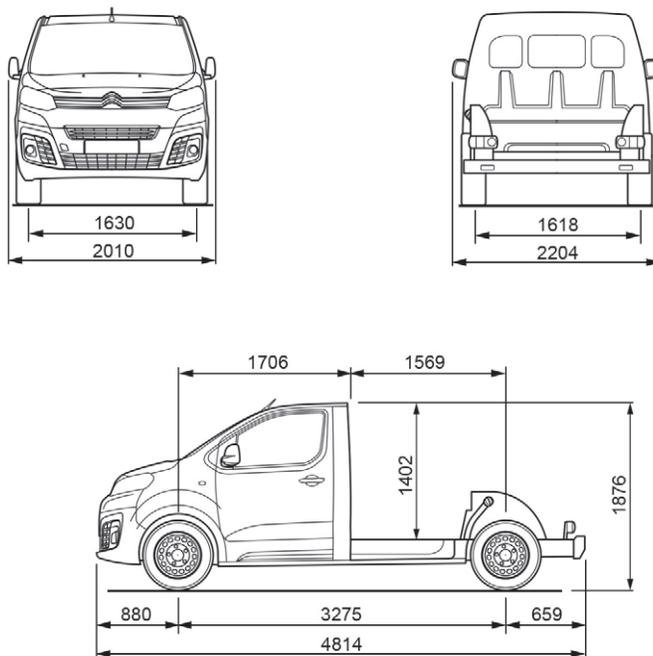


* Increased payload.

** Payload increased with high body.

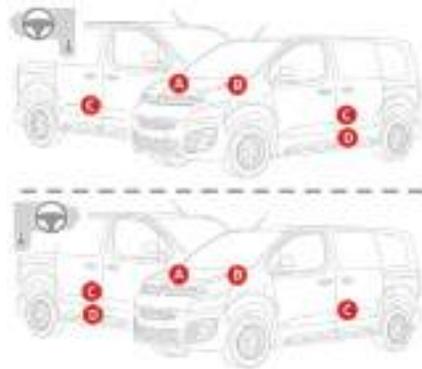
*** Depending on the country of sale.

Cab floor



Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower cross member.

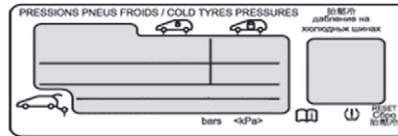
The number is on an adhesive label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This self-destroying label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyre/paint label.



This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Checking tyre pressures

The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 30 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

! Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

🍀 Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	25
Media	26
Telephone	28
Configuration	33
Frequently asked questions	37

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

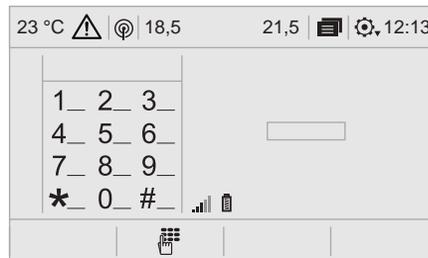
You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

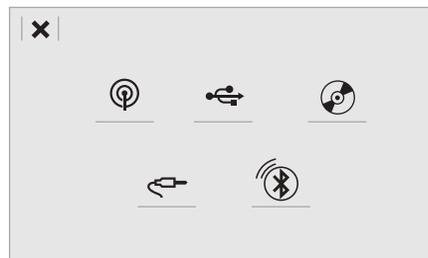
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- USB key.
- CD player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.



or



Mute / Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



or



Decrease volume.



or



SRC



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

or

SRC

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.

Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.



or



Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

LIST

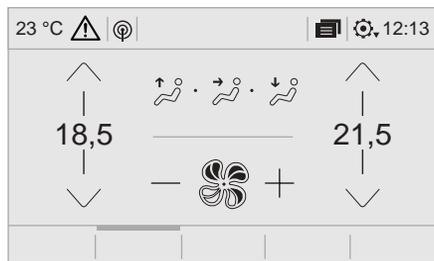
Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

Air conditioning



Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation

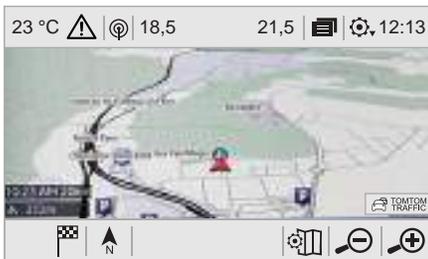


Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

or

Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.

NAV



Applications

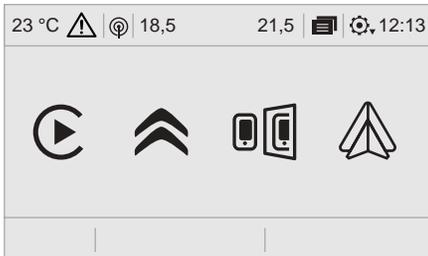


Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.

or

Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

APPS



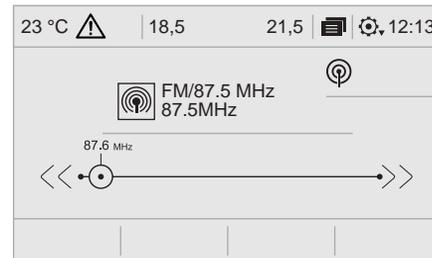
Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

or

MEDIA



Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

or

TEL



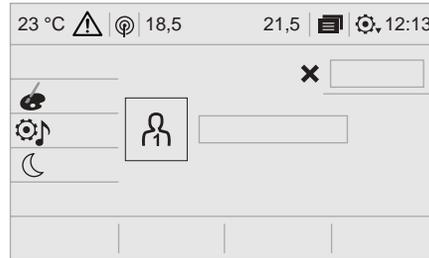
Configuration



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

or

SETUP



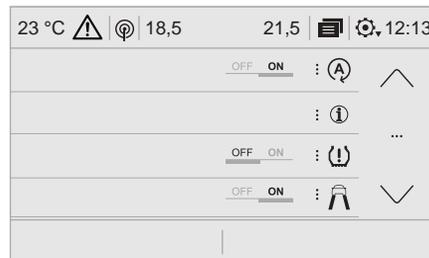
Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version),
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address", "11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to /...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Help	<p>There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".</p>
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	<p>To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".</p>
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	<p>To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.</p>
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

i Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

i Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<p>Call contact <...>*</p>	<p>To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 0123 456789". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".</p>
<p>Dial <...>*</p>	
<p>Display contacts*</p>	
<p>Display calls*</p>	
<p>Call (message box voicemail)*</p>	

"Text message" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress. If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages. Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

 The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a profile

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take in the list of "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards coordinates GPS



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

i Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

On the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



i The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

i The principles and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or
NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorize sending information"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: **"Authorize sending information"**.



The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".



Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".



Select the "**System info**" tab.



Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select "**Update(s) due**".



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.

Select your country of residence.



OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**®, **MirrorLink**™ or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

or

TEL

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press on **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The **"MirrorLink™"** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "MirrorLink™" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "Applications" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "Connectivity" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "Android Auto" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menu by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers, is deactivated.

i There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth® connection

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Connection Wi-Fi

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.

i The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Connection sharing Wi-Fi

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

Select the **"Settings"** to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Manage connections



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "Station follow".

OK

Press "OK".

i If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model / depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **"Radio Media"** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select **"Source"**.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " "?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i Activation of the profile; **"Mobile internet data"** is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted TEL button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Configuration

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

! Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

 Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

 Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Colour schemes

 As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).</p>	<p>The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.</p>	<p>Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.</p>
	<p>The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.</p>	<p>This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.</p>
	<p>The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).</p>	<p>Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.</p>
<p>I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.</p>	<p>The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.</p>	<p>Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.</p>

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.5.1 (2015-01)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	EN 550 141 AEMU V0.9.2 (2011-09)
	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.2.1 (2012-06)
	ETSI EN 301 489-2 V2.1.1 (2010-08)
	EN 550 22 (2011)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A12:2011 + A13:2011 + A14:2011 + A15:2011
	2011/65/EU; 2014/53/EU; 2014/54/EU; 2014/55/EU; 2014/68/EU

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

ATA wireless, S.A.
 Parque Tecnológico de Andalucía
 C/ Severo Ochoa 2
 29550 Campanillas – Málaga
 SPAIN
 Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product (label on top):



There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

- Specific instructions of installation and proper use of the equipment.

This Multimedia System Equipment must be fixed in a car dashboard.

This Equipment is intended to be installed by service persons or qualified operators in a restricted access location that can only be accessed by using a tool.

The external devices and accessories connected to the equipment shall comply its product standard in order to prevent fire risks.

Emblemas:

MINI AUTO FUSE W Yellow 20:

Voltage rated: 22V (Volts)

Current rated: 20A (Amperes)

600	0.30 seconds	0.100 seconds
350	0.080 seconds	0.250 seconds
200	0.15 seconds	5 seconds
135	0.75 seconds	600 seconds
110	100 hours	-
% of rating	Minimum	Maximum
	Blow Time	

- List of countries within the EU or geographical zones where it can be used.

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union:

Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom.

- Information about the license that apply to it.

There is no specific license.

- Restrictions or possible additional restrictions when trying to achieve the authorization of use of the equipment.

There is no specific restriction to achieve the authorization of use of the equipment.

USA – Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

FCC ID: 2EM-RUCEDR2

1. Modification Statement

"Continental Automotive Rambouillet France S.A.S." has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

2. Interference statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3. Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

4. FCC Class A/B digital device or peripheral notice – Class

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	6
Radio	7
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	9
Media	10
Telephone	12
Configuration	18
Frequently asked questions	21

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons either side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

* Depending on equipment.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

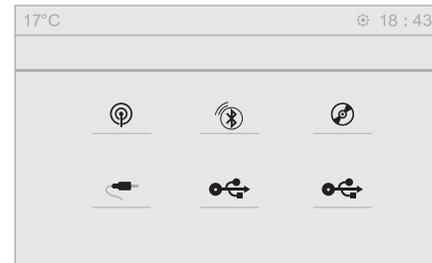
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB* / AM* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB key.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Depending on model.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.

or



Mute / Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

or



Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Decrease volume.



or



SRC



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

or

SRC

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.

or



Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

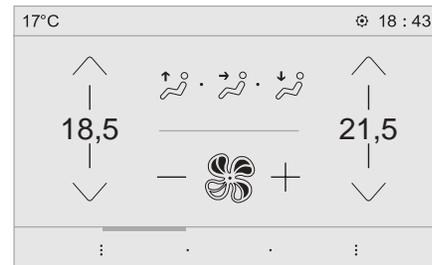
Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

Air conditioning



Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



Applications



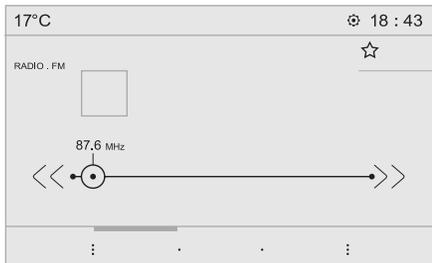
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media



Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone



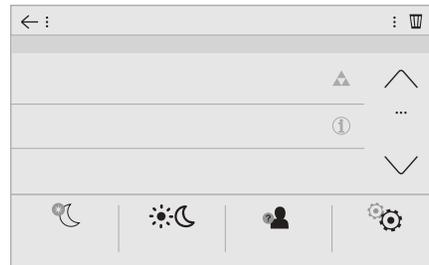
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving



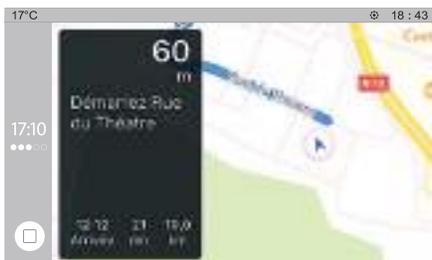
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press **"Photos"**.



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press **"SMS"**.



Select the **"SMS"** tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the **"Quick messages"** tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



In the tab "**Tone**", the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources. On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i Onboard audio: the Sound Staging of Arkamys® optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".



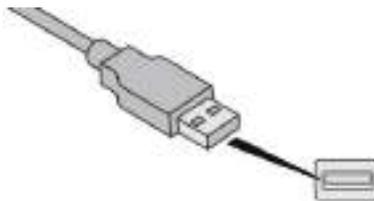
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press "**Radio Media**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® streaming audio

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is done by the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. ".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " "?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

- It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

- As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

- The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

- As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

- The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated. As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**. For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Smartphone connection Android Auto



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.



The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**". The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Configuration

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust luminosity



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Language"** to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Date and time"**.

Select **"Time"**.



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).



Press the back arrow to save the settings.



The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **"Configuration"** to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Date and time"**.

Select **"Date"**.



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of picked stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

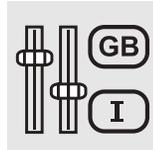
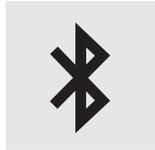
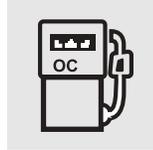
QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.

Czech [Čeština]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH máno profiškálie. Že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základním požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ucla novými směrnice 1999/5/EC.
Dansk [Dansk]	Underlagtende Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer hermed, at følgende ordlyd "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC", overholder de væsentlige krav og eventuelle relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [Deutsch]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Eesti keel]	Käesolevaga kirjutab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH spetsiifse "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavalt direktiivile 1999/5/EÜ põhiolemusele ja nimetatud direktiivi tähtsimatele teistele rakenduslikele sätetele.
English	Herby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Español]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνικά [Ελληνικά]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΔΡΑΣΗ ΤΗΣ "PSA RCC" ΑΦΑΙΡΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΤΡΟΠΟΙ ΤΩ ΟΡΘΟΛΟΓΩ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΩ ΚΑΙ ΤΩ ΑΝΟΙΧΤΩ ΣΥΝΕΤΗΕΣ ΑΝΑΛΕΞΕΙ ΤΗ ΟΔΗΓΙΑ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [Français]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions prescrites de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italiano]	At to Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara, che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" a conforma ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Läti keel [Läti keel]	At to Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklareer, et see "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" tähtsimatele nõuetele vastavalt direktiivile 1999/5/EÜ.
Lietuvių [Lietuvių kalba]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaracija, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta [Maltese]	“Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jidhergħa li din “PSA RCC”, “PSA RCC” jikkonforma mal-reqeżiti essenzjali u ma jipprovdwaxxni ebrijaq oħrajn rilevanti li jkannu fidi-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Magyar]	Az alábbi Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozata, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányszabványok elvárásainak.
Polski [Polski]	Ministerstwo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymaganiami oraz pozostałymi istotnymi przepisami dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Português]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenski]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH uvaja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovenski]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Suomi]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" täyttää direktiivin "1999/5/ET" oleelliset vaatimukset ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukaisesti.
Svenska [Svenska]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga grundläggande och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Svenska [Svenska]	Här med för Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att vi på "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" är i sammanhang med grundläggande och övriga relevanta krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

<p>(concerning the type-approval of an electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)</p>	<p>emitted frequency range and power</p> <p>Frequency band: Radiated Power [ERP] Hertz /Restriction</p> <p>2402 MHz – 2400 MHz WiFi < 51mWv Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth = 2.6 mWv Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2 Antenna configuration: internal antenna</p> <p>Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.</p>
<p>Brazil</p>	 <p>Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.</p>
<p>Canada</p>	<p>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS requirements. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:</p> <p>(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and</p> <p>(2) the device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>R= Radio Type Approval Number: REB05R05B0506</p>
<p>Japan</p>	<p>T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: XJJ-2010/AAA RCR ID: 3C71-2008</p>
<p>Mexico</p>	<p>La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:</p> <p>(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y</p> <p>(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.</p>
<p>South Korea</p>	<p>본 장비가 무선주파수 전파를 방사할 때 다음 두 가지 조건을 충족해야 합니다.</p> <p>1. 본 장비가 다른 무선주파수 전파 수신기에 간섭을 일으키지 않아야 하며, 또한 수신기에 의해 발생하는 간섭을 감수할 수 있어야 합니다.</p> <p>2. 본 장비가 무선주파수 전파를 방출할 때 다음 두 가지 조건을 충족해야 합니다.</p>
<p>Taiwan</p>	<p>此設備經核准之使用不得影響其他安全及干擾合法通信；如發現有害干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得重新使用。</p> <p>本產品符合RCC標準之技術規格，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。</p>
<p>USA / Canada</p>	<p>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standards.</p> <p>Operation is subject to the following two conditions:</p> <p>(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and</p> <p>(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.</p> <p>Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.</p>

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	8
Telephone	11
Frequently asked questions	16

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

! Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

i To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On / Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC /

Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation / Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.



Radio:

Automatic step by step search up / down for radio stations.

Media:

Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:

Manual step by step search up / down for radio stations.
Select previous / next MP3 folder.

Media:

Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU

Access to the main menu.

TA

Activate / Deactivate TA (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND

Selection of FM / DAB / AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



MENU

Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.



"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



"**Trip computer**".



"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.



"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.



"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU

Press the "**MENU**" button.



Move from one menu to another.

OK

Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC /

Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND

Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST

Press this button to display the list of stations received locally. To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

i The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

i If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears barred in the screen.

! The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶▶ Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

! Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲▼ Select "RadioText (TXT) display" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

According to version

i If the current "DAB" radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



- 1 Option display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- 2 Display of the name of the current station.
- 3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- 4 Display the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".
- 5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.
- 6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex service".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available according to the station).

i When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu. (Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB/FM station tracking

i "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country. When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists). When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

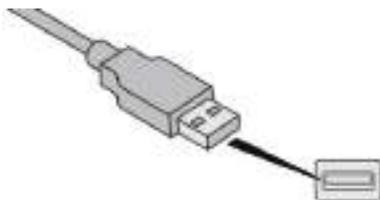
◀▶▶ Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲▼ Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

i If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio sometimes with a change in volume.

! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection. Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal:** the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random:** the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media:** all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲
▼ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.

▲
▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

◀▶ Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**". Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.



Press one of these buttons to go to the next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* previous/next in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Jack Input (AUX) socket

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

Press the **SOURCE** button several

SRC / times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only. Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player. Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player. The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. The folder structure is not observed during playback. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or fast back.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE**. In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen. If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g.: « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD. If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

 Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

 It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pair a Bluetooth® telephone

 As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a device**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.



Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Manage connections



The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Indicates that a device is connected.



A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

i When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of the buttons for more than two seconds.

i The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases, the combined mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Consultation call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Directory



To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.



Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

i Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
<p>With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.</p>	<p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.</p>	<p>Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.</p>
<p>The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.</p>	<p>In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.</p>	<p>Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.</p>

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system and of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

The device (RDBs Car-Audio from XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD.) complies with following information.

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notices

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Belgium	C. inconnu XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,accapato, se RDBs otrompiti in caratteristiche tecniche in quanto appaiono a massimo in larghezza 1999/5/EC.
Bulgaria	Описание XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,свързване на всяка RDB в адекватно състояние
Croatia	opisivanje i davanje relevantnih informacija 1999/5/EC.
Czech	aktualizace produktů a důležitých informací souvisejících s výrobou 1999/5/EC.
Denmark	Underlægge XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , tekniske RDBs er i overensstemmelse med de væsentlige krav og oplysninger i direktivet 1999/5/EC.
Dutch	Wettelijk vereisten XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , die het meetal RDB in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EC.
English	Hereby, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declares that the RDBs in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga loetakse XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , seadme RDBs vastavalt direktiivi 1999/5/EC nõuetele ja muudele oluliselt tehnoloogilistele teadmistele seadme ajakohastatud alastele.
German	Hiermit erklärt XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dass sich das Gerät RDBs in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EC befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΣ ΕΠΙΣΤΡΟΦΗΣ XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ Η RDB ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΜΕ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΑΣ ΕΠΙΧΕΙΡΗΣΙΑΚΕΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΕΧΝΟΛΟΓΙΚΕΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΜΗΛΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Alábbról, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , nyilatkozunk, hogy a RDB megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Italian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , dichiara che il prodotto (RDB) è conforme alle disposizioni tecniche e alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Japanese	本製品の製造者は、この製品の設計・製造に、この指令 (1999/5/EC) の規定を遵守していることを、この製品に関する技術的資料に記述している。
Korean	이 제품은 XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. ,에서 제조된 것으로, 1999/5/EC 지침에 적합합니다.
Latvian	Ar šo XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , deklarē, ka RDB atbilst Direktīvai 1999/5/EC.
Lithuanian	Šiuo XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , deklaravame, kad šis RDB atitinka esminines reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Maltese	Hereby, XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , jgħid li din RDB jikkonforma mal-irregolazzjonijiet u mal-provviżjonijiet oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fad-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Norwegian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , erklærer hermed at utstyret RDBs er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og opplysninger i direktivet 1999/5/EC.
Polish	Wiązującym wyrażamy oraz potwierdzamy stosowanie postanowień Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portuguese	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declara que este RDB está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/EC.
Russian	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , гарантирует соблюдение требований и других существенных положений постановления 1999/5/EC.
Slovak	XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , vyhlasuje, ze RDB splna uzadane podmienky a iné dulezite ustanovenia stanovene v smernici 1999/5/ES.
Slovenian	XiAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , izjavlja, da je ta RDB v skladu s bistvenimi zahtevami in drugimi pomembnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , declara que RDB cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/EC.
Swedish	Härmed bekräftar XIAMEN CLARION ELECTRICAL ENTERPRISE CO., LTD. , att denna RDB står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga grundkraven och de övriga i denna direktiv som fastslås av direktivet 1999/5/EC.

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	EN 300 138 v1.9.1 (2015)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011)
	EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012)
	EN 55013 (2013)
	EN 55020 (2007) + A11 (2011)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A12:2010 + A13:2011 + AC:2011 + A2:2013

Information related to NREO:

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

A14 writes, S.A.L.
Parque Tecnológico de Andalucía
C/ Severo Ochoa 2
29598 Campanillas - Málaga
SPAIN
Notified Body No. 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product:

CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

O modelo RD6 possui duas versões identificadas pelo Part number do produto:
• RU-0473: Possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB);
• RU-0475: Não possui a opção de sintonia digital FM (DAB).



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentares pela Resolução 240/2000, e atende aos requisitos técnicos aplicáveis.

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL - www.anatel.gov.br



DRO-Q-TCY-09-2011-111328-LPD-34236

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – RD6

44028/SDPPV/2015
5003

OMAN – TRA
R/3095/16
D100428

Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

AGREE PAUL MAROC

Numero d'agreement : MR 31704 ANRT 2016
Date d'agreement : 22/04/2016

Car Audio
RD6
CLARION

警語

低功率電波輻射電機管理辦法

第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航或影響安全及干擾合法通信,經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信,指一電信法規作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機需忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



TA-2016/121
APPROVED

180° rear vision 230-233

A

ABS 145-146
 Access, AdBlue tank 254
 Accessories 142, 183
 Access to the 3rd row 99, 102
 Access to the spare wheel 267-268
 Active Safety Brake 19, 218-220
 AdBlue® 22, 31, 252-255
 Additive, AdBlue 255
 Additive, Diesel 250-251
 Adjusting headlamp beam height 137
 Adjusting headlamps 137
 Adjusting head restraints 91, 93
 Adjusting seat 87, 89-90
 Adjusting the air distribution 117-118
 Adjusting the air flow 117-118
 Adjusting the date 37-38, 36, 20
 Adjusting the height and reach
 of the steering wheel 85
 Adjusting the lumbar support 88
 Adjusting the seat belt height 151
 Adjusting the temperature 117-118
 Adjusting the time 37-38, 36, 20
 Advice on driving 176-178
 Airbags 20, 154, 159
 Airbags, curtain 155-156
 Airbags, front 154, 156, 160
 Airbags, lateral 155-156
 Air conditioning 118, 124, 124-125
 Air conditioning, automatic 123-124
 Air conditioning, digital 120
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 117-118
 Air conditioning, manual 115-116, 120, 123-124
 Air intake 117-118, 120
 Alarm 81-83
 Alarm, volumetric 81

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 19, 145-146
 Anti-theft 44, 185
 Area, loading 39-40, 62
 Armrest 108
 Armrest, front 91
 ASR 21, 145-146
 Assistance, emergency braking ... 145-146, 221
 Assistance call 143-144
 Audible warning 145
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 27, 11, 10
 Auxiliary 26-27, 10-11

B

Battery 15, 242-243, 250, 288, 290-292
 Battery, charging 289-290
 Battery, remote control 45-46, 59-60, 127
 Battery capacity 292
 Bench seat, one-piece, fixed 99-101
 Blind spot monitoring system 225-226
 Blind spot sensors 25
 BlueHDi 23, 31, 252
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 28-29, 15-16, 11-12
 Bluetooth (telephone) 28-30, 15-17
 Bonnet 246
 Boot 80
 Brake discs 251-252
 Brake lamps 278-282
 Brakes 14, 19, 251-252
 Braking, automatic emergency 19, 218-221
 Brightness 19
 Bulbs (changing) 272-273, 278, 280
 Bulbs (changing, type) 272-273

C

Cable, audio 26, 10
 Cable, jack 26, 10
 Cap, fuel filler 237-238
 Capacity, fuel tank 237-238
 CarPlay connection 18, 13
 CD 26-27, 11, 9
 CD, MP3 26-27, 11, 9-10
 Central locking 50, 54-55
 Changing a bulb 272-273, 278-282
 Changing a bulb (side-hinged doors) 278
 Changing a bulb (tailgate) 280
 Changing a fuse 283-287
 Changing a wheel 266
 Changing a wiper blade 141, 245
 Changing the remote control
 battery 45-46, 59-60
 Checking the engine oil level 30
 Checking the levels 247, 249
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) ... 260-265
 Checks 247, 250-252
 Checks, routine 250-252
 Child lock 174-175
 Child lock, electric 174
 Child lock on rear windows 175
 Children 164, 168-170, 172
 Children (safety) 174
 Child seats 153, 157-159, 163-166, 173
 Child seats, conventional 163-166
 Child seats, ISOFIX 168-170, 172
 CITROËN Connect Nav 1
 CITROËN Connect Radio 1
 Closing the boot 80
 Closing the doors
 50, 54-55, 63-66, 69-70, 77-79
 Collision risk alert 19, 218-219, 218-220
 Compressor, tyre inflation 260
 Connection, Bluetooth .. 21-22, 28-30, 15-17, 12
 Connection, MirrorLink 19, 12-14
 Connection, Wi-Fi network 22
 Control, emergency boot release 80

Control, emergency door44-45, 57-59
 Control, heated seats..... 91-92
 Control stalk, lighting26, 130
 Control stalk, wipers 137-139
 Courtesy lamp.....279
 Courtesy lamp, front 128-129, 279, 282
 Courtesy lamp, rear 128-129, 279, 282
 Courtesy lamps 128-129, 279, 282
 Crew cab, fixed106-107
 Crew cab, folding 107
 Cruise control.....202, 204-205, 209-211
 Cruise control,
 adaptive 204-205, 211-215, 217-218
 Cruise control by speed limit
 recognition 204-205
 Cup holder.....108

D

DAB (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting) – Digital radio 25, 9, 6-7
 Date (setting)..... 38, 36, 20
 Daytime running lamps 130, 132, 273-275
 Deactivating the passenger airbag.... 154, 159-160
 Deactivation of DSC (ESC)..... 147
 Deadlocking43, 50, 55-56
 Defrosting.....86, 120
 Demisting120
 Demisting, rear..... 85, 121-122
 Demisting, rear screen85, 121-122
 Diagnostic system, engine..... 17
 Dimensions301
 Dipstick.....30, 248-249
 Direction indicators
 26, 132, 273, 276-278, 280, 282
 Display, head-up 200-201
 Display screen, instrument panel188
 Door pockets..... 108, 110
 Doors.....63

Doors, rear77-78
 Doors, side-hinged 54-56, 77-79, 278-279
 Driver's attention warning223
 Driver's door open warning.....64
 Driving abroad..... 131
 Driving time warning223
 DSC21, 145-146
 Dynamic stability control (DSC).....21, 145-150

E

EBA145-146
 EBSD145-146
 Economy mode242-243
 Electric windows 83-84
 Electronic brake force
 distribution (EBFD)145-146
 Emergency call143-144
 Emergency warning lamps143, 257
 Emissions control system, SCR23
 Energy economy mode.....242-243
 Engine, Diesel.....
 18, 240, 247, 257, 295-296, 298-299
 Engine compartment247
 Engines294
 Environment46, 127
 ESC (electronic stability control)21
 ESC/ASR145-146
 ESC system.....21

F

Fatigue detection223
 Filling the fuel tank..... 237-238, 240
 Filter, air250
 Filter, oil250
 Filter, particle 250-251
 Filter, passenger compartment.....250

Finisher271
 Fitting a wheel..... 269-271
 Fitting roof bars 243-244
 Fittings, interior 108-109, 113
 Fittings, rear 113
 Fitting the mat108
 Flap, fuel filler.....237-238
 Flap, removable94-97
 Flashing indicators.....26, 132
 Floor cab282
 Foglamp, rear 131, 278, 280, 282
 Foglamps274
 Foglamps, front26, 131, 134-135, 274, 277
 Foglamps, rear.....131
 Frequency (radio) 24-25
 Fuel.....240
 Fuel consumption..... 36-37
 Fuel tank.....16
 Fusebox, engine compartment287
 Fuses.....283-287

G

Gauge, fuel.....237-238
 Gearbox, automatic
 18, 179, 186, 189-193, 198-200, 251
 Gearbox, electronic 179, 186, 194-200, 251
 Gearbox, manual
 18, 186, 186-187, 198-200, 199, 251
 Gear lever, automatic gearbox189-193
 Gear lever, electronic gearbox251
 Gear lever, manual gearbox187
 Gear shift indicator ~ Gear
 efficiency indicator 188
 Glove box109
 G.P.S14
 Grip control148-150
 Guide-me-home.....133-134

H

Hazard warning lamps	143, 257
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation.....	143
Headlamp adjustment.....	137
headlamp adjustment.....	137
Headlamp beam height.....	137
Headlamp dipping, automatic.....	136
Headlamps, automatic dipping.....	25, 135-136
Headlamps, automatic illumination	130, 132-134
Headlamps, dipped	
beam.....	25-26, 130, 273-274, 276
Headlamps, halogen.....	273-275
Headlamps, main	
beam.....	25-26, 130, 273, 275-276
Headlamps, Xenon	273, 276
Headlamp wash	140
Head restraints, front.....	91, 93
Head restraints, rear	99
Head-up display.....	200-201
Heated bench seat.....	93
Heating.....	115-116, 123-127
Heating, additional.....	81, 125-127
Heating, programmable.....	81, 125-127
Hill start assist.....	186
Horn.....	145

I

Identification, vehicle	305
Ignition.....	181, 183, 31
Ignition on.....	183
Immobiliser, electronic.....	44, 60, 185
Indicator, AdBlue® range.....	31
Indicator, coolant temperature.....	29-30
Indicator, engine oil level	30
Indicator lamps, operation	13
Indicators, direction	132
Inflating tyres	305
Inflating tyres and accessories	
(using the kit)	260-265

Instrument panel	10
Intelligent Traction Control.....	146
Internet Browser.....	18
ISOFIX	168-170, 172
Jack	112, 266, 26, 10
Jump starting	288
Key	39-42, 60, 63-64, 178
Key, electronic.....	39, 183-184
Keyless Entry and	
Starting	46, 50-61, 63-64, 181-182, 185
Key with remote control	42, 44, 54-55, 178, 185
Kit, hands-free	28-29, 15-16, 11-12
Kit, puncture repair	260-265
Kit, temporary puncture repair.....	259-265

L

Labels.....	7, 105
Labels, identification	305
Lane Departure Warning	
System (LDWS)	26, 222
Level, brake fluid	249
Level, Diesel additive	250-251
Level, engine coolant.....	29-30, 249
Level, engine oil	30, 248-249
Level, headlamp wash	140, 249
Level, power steering fluid.....	249
Level, screenwash fluid	140, 249
Levels and checks	247, 249
Lighting, cornering	134-135
Lighting, exterior	130
Lighting, guide-me home	133-134
Lighting, welcome	134
Lighting dimmer	34
Loading	243
Loading area fittings	112
Load reduction mode.....	243
Load restraint.....	112
Locating your vehicle.....	43

Locking.....	42, 46, 49, 54-55, 60
Locking from the inside.....	61-62
Low fuel level	16, 237-238
Lumbar	88

M

Markings, identification.....	305
Mat	108, 181
Memorising a speed	202
Menu	13
Menu, main	4
Menus (audio)	4-5, 4-6
Messages.....	32
Messages, quick	32
Mirror, rear view	86-87
Mirror, vanity	109
Mirrors, door.....	85-86, 121-122, 225-226
Misfuel prevention.....	238
Moduwork.....	94-97
Mountings, Isofix.....	166, 169-170, 172
MP3 CD.....	10

N

Net, cargo.....	94-97
Net, high load retaining.....	113-114
Number plate lamps.....	279, 281

O

Oil, engine	15, 248-249
Oil change	248-249
Oil consumption	248-249
On-board tools	258-260
Opening the bonnet	246
Opening the boot	39, 50, 80

Opening the doors39, 50, 63, 66-70, 79
 Opening to 180°77-78

P

Pads, brake251-252
 Paint colour code305
 Parking brake14, 185, 251-252
 Parking sensors, audible and visual..... 228-229
 Parking sensors, front..... 228-229
 Parking sensors, rear..... 227-229
 Plates, identification.....305
 Player, Apple® 27, 11, 10
 Player, MP3 CD..... 26, 9-10
 Player, USB26, 10, 8
 Port, USB 111, 26, 10, 8
 Power steering 21
 Pressures, tyres 261, 265, 305
 Pre-tensioning seat belts 153
 Priming the fuel system257
 Profiles34, 18
 Protecting children
 154, 157-160, 164, 168-170, 172-173
 Puncture.....260-265

R

Radio23-24, 27, 7, 11, 4-6
 Radio, digital (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting – DAB)25, 9, 6
 Range 36-37
 Range, AdBlue31-32
 RDS 24-25, 7
 Rear screen, demisting 121-122
 Recharging the battery 289-290
 Recirculation, air117-118, 120
 Reduction of electrical load243
 Regeneration of the particle filter251

Reinitialisation of the under-
 inflation detection system.....235
 Reinitialising the remote control ... 45-46, 59-60
 Reminder, key in ignition..... 181
 Reminder, lighting on 131-132
 Remote control.... 39-42, 44, 46-50, 57-61, 63-64
 Removing a wheel 269-271
 Removing the mat 108
 Replacing bulbs 272-273, 278-282
 Replacing fuses 283-286
 Replacing the air filter 250
 Replacing the oil filter 250
 Replacing the passenger compartment filter ...250
 Reservoir, headlamp wash 249
 Reservoir, screenwash 249
 Reset journey 36
 Resetting the service indicator29
 Resetting the trip recorder 33-34
 Reversing camera 230-233
 Reversing camera (on interior mirror)229
 Reversing lamp 278, 280, 282
 Roof bars 243-244
 Running out of fuel (Diesel)257

S

Safety, children
 154, 157-160, 164, 168-170, 172-173
 Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel)..... 251
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction)252
 Screen, instrument panel..... 35-36
 Screen, multifunction (with audio system)..... 4
 Screen menu map 13
 Screenwash 140
 Screenwash, rear..... 139
 SCR system252
 Seat, bench front, 2-seat 92, 151
 Seat, rear bench 105
 Seat and bench seat, rear, fixed..... 102-105

Seat and bench seat, rear, on rails..... 105
 Seat belts 150-153, 163
 Seat belts, rear..... 151
 Seats, electric 89-90
 Seats, front 87, 89-90
 Seats, heated 91-93
 Seats, rear 99-104
 Selector, gear 194-197
 Serial number, vehicle 305
 Service indicator 27, 29
 Servicing27
 Settings, system 35, 19
 Sidelamps 130, 273-275, 278, 280, 282
 Side repeater 274
 Sliding side door,
 electric 41-42, 48, 54-56, 66-73
 Sliding side door, hands-free74-76
 Sliding side door, manual 64-66, 70
 Sliding side window 114
 Snow chains 234, 241, 268
 Snow chains, link 241, 268
 Socket, 12 V accessory 111
 Socket, auxiliary 26, 10, 9
 Socket, JACK 112, 26, 10, 9
 Sockets, audio 111-112
 Speed limiter 202, 204-208
 Speed limit recognition
 202-204, 206-215, 217-218
 Stability control (ESC).....21, 145-146
 Starting a Diesel engine 240
 Starting the engine 178-179
 Starting the vehicle ... 181, 183-184, 186, 189-197
 Starting using another battery288
 Station, radio23-25, 7, 4
 Stay, bonnet 246
 Steering mounted controls, audio3, 3, 3
 Steering wheel, adjustment85
 Stop 14
 Stop (warning lamp) 14

Stop & Start.....
 19, 25, 37, 121, 124, 198-200, 237, 246, 291
 Stopping the vehicle181-184, 189-197
 Storage..... 94, 98, 106-109
 Storage compartments109-110
 Storage wells 106-107, 110
 Stowing rings 112
 Sun visor109
 Switching off the engine 178-180
 Synchronising the remote control.... 45-46, 59-60

T

Table of weights 295-296, 298-299
 Table position89
 Tables of fuses 283-287
 Table top, working..... 98
 Tailgate..... 54-56, 80, 280-281
 Tank, fuel.....237-238
 Technical data 295-296, 298-299
 Telephone 28-33, 15-18, 11-14
 Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 15
 Temperature, coolant..... 15, 29-30
 Textured Paint256
 Third brake lamp279, 281
 Three flashes (direction indicators) 132
 Time (setting) 38, 36, 20
 TMC (Traffic info) 14
 Tool box.....258-260
 Tools..... 260, 266
 Topping up the AdBlue® additive255
 Total distance recorder 33-34
 Touch screen..... 34, 76, 134, 199, 211, 1, 1
 Towbar..... 177-178, 242
 Towed loads 294-296, 298-299
 Towing another vehicle 292-293
 Towing eye292
 Traction control (ASR)21, 145-146, 148
 Traffic information (TA)5

Traffic information (TMC)..... 14
 Trailer 177-178, 242
 Triangle, warning.....257
 Trip computer 35-37
 Trip distance recorder..... 33-34
 Type of bulbs 272-273
 Tyres.....305
 Tyre under-inflation detection234-235, 265, 271

U

Under-inflation (detection)18, 234
 Unlocking 39-42, 46-48, 50-54
 Unlocking, selective39-41, 48, 51-53
 Unlocking, total39-40, 51-53
 Unlocking from the inside 61-62, 67-70
 Unlocking the doors 68-70
 Updating the date..... 38, 36, 20
 Updating the time..... 38, 36, 20
 USB 111, 26-27, 10-11, 8

V

Ventilation 115-116, 120, 123-124
 Voice commands5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
 Warning lamp, braking system 14
 Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 18
 Warning lamp, door(s) open 16
 Warning lamp, driver's seat
 belt not fastened 152
 Warning lamp, SCR emissions
 control system23
 Warning lamp, seat belts 152

Warning lamp, Service.....24
 Warning lamp, Stop 14
 Warning lamp, water in Diesel filter..... 16
 Warning lamps 13
 Washer jets, heated 121, 140
 Weights 294-296, 298-299
 Welcome lighting.....43
 Wheel, spare234, 260, 266-268, 271, 305
 Windows, rear 114
 Windscreen, heated 121, 140
 Wiper, rear.....139
 Wiper blades (changing) 141, 245
 Wipers25, 137-139
 Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....138-139

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

<https://www.besttruckmanuals.com/>

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

3-17

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



